

AL-BAHER

# CONNECT

الصف الرابع الابتدائي  
First Term



4<sup>th</sup>  
Primary



2025  
Parents' Guide

# Contents

**Review on Primary (3) (3)**

**Let's remember (7)**

**Theme (1) I discover myself**

**Unit (1) I feel good (12)**

**Unit (2) Desert animals (42)**

**Unit (3) Why do we grow plants? (73)**

**Review (1) (105)**

**Theme (2) Myself and others**

**Unit (4) Where do you live? (107)**

**Unit (5) Where do you work? (140)**

**Unit (6) What do you do? (172)**

**Review (2) (202)**

**Listening Texts (206)**



# Review on Primary (3)

## Feelings المشاعر

angry	غضبان	happy	سعيد	excited	متحمس - مسرور
sad	حزين	hungry	جوعان	thirsty	عطشان
tired	متعب	kind	عطوف	unkind	غير عطوف - قاسي

## Body & Illnesses الجسم و الأمراض

stomach	معدة	bone	عظمة	heart	قلب
skin	جلد	cold	برد	cough	كحة - سعال
fever	حمى	sick	مريض	headache	صداع

## Activities الأنشطة

play sports	بمارس الرياضة	collect magnets	يجمع قطع المغناطيس
sing songs	بغني أغاني	listen to music	يستمتع إلى الموسيقى
draw a picture	يرسم صورة	take photos	يلتقط صورًا

## Furniture الأثاث

armchair	كرسي بذراعين	bookcase	خزانة كتب	chair	كرسي
clock	ساعة حائط	cupboard	دولاب	lamp	أباجورة / مصباح
couch	كنبة - أريكة	television	تلفاز	table	طاولة - منضدة

## Animals الحيوانات

elephant	فيل	giraffe	زرافة	hippo	فرس النهر
lion	أسد	panda	دب الباندا	penguin	طائر البطريق

## Circus people العاملون في السيرك

clown	مُهْنَج	ringmaster	مدير الحلبة
dog trainer	مدرب كلاب	trapeze artist	لاعب الأرجوحة

Help your child revise these words.

ساعد طفلك في مراجعة هذه الكلمات.

AI-BAHER - Connect (4) - First Term 3



## Countries & Nationalities الدول والجنسيات

Egypt	مصر	Egyptian	مصري
America	أمريكا	American	أمريكي
China	الصين	Chinese	صيني
France	فرنسا	French	فرنسي

## Sea Creatures المخلوقات البحرية

octopus	أخطبوط	jellyfish	قنديل البحر	starfish	نجم البحر
sea snake	تعبان البحر	seahorse	حصان البحر	fish	سمكة
shark	سمكة القرش	tilapia	سمكة البلطي		

## Seasons & Weather فصول السنة والطقس

winter	الشتاء	spring	الربيع	summer	الصيف
fall	الخريف	hot	حار	rainy	ممطر
sunny	شمس	cold	بارد	cloudy	غائم

## Technology تكنولوجيا

information	معلومات	website	موقع على الإنترنت	internet	الإنترنت
cell phone	هاتف محمول	keyboard	لوحة المفاتيح	mouse	فأرة
computer	كمبيوتر	search engine	محرك بحث	tablet	تابلت
email	بريد إلكتروني				

## Phonics:

ee /i:/	feel happy	يشعر بسعادة	bee	نحلة	sleep	ينام
ea /i:/	leaf	ورقة شجر	clean	ينظف		
	meat	لحم	eat	يأكل		

### Review on Primary (3)

**ck /k/**

sick مريض black أسود kick يركل (يشوط)

**sk /sk/**

skin جلد skirt جيبه sky السماء skip ينط (الجيل)

**ng /ŋ/**

sing يغني fishing صيد السمك swimming السباحة

**sp /sp/**

sports الألعاب الرياضية space الفضاء spider عنكبوت

**air /eər/**

hair شعر chair كرسي pair زوج

**ear /ɪər/**

ear اذن beard لحية

**ph /f/**

photos صور فوتوغرافية elephant فيل

**wh /w/**

When متى Where اين white ابيض whale حوت

**ou /aʊ/**

cloud سحابة mouse فأر mouth فم house منزل

**ow /aʊ/**

clown مقلد cow بقرة flower زهرة

Help your child revise these words.

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - First Term 5

ساعد طفلك في مراجعة هذه الكلمات.



ff /f/

coffee

قهوة

df

مغلق

muffin

كعكة

ll /l/

dollar

دولار

bell

جرس

tall

طويل

ss /s/

glass

زجاج

dress

فستان

spr /spr/

spring

فصل الربيع

spray

رشاش - بخاخ

str /str/

street

شارع

strawberry

فراولة

straight

مستقيم

br /br/

bracelet

سوار

branch

فرع

bread

خبز

broom

مقشة

pr /pr/

present

هدية

princess

أميرة

price

سعر

printer

طابعة

er /ə/

teacher

معلم

painter

رسام

singer

مغني

cleaner

عامل نظافة

gg /g/

egg

بيضة

foggy

ضبابي

tt /t/

butter

زبدة

kitten

قطعة صغيرة

# Lesson (1)

## LET'S REMEMBER!

### Jewelry

مجوهرات



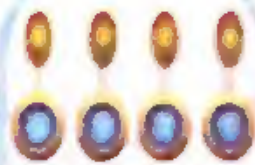
rings

خواتم



bracelets

أساور



earrings

حلقان / أذنان

### Foods

الأطعمة



bread

خبز



rice

أرز



eggs

بيض



pasta

مكرونة



sugar

سكر



chicken

دجاج



fish

سمك



cereal

طعام من الحبوب



soup

شوربة



meat

لحم



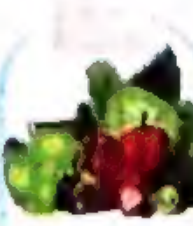
potatoes

بطاطس



fruit

فاكهة



vegetables

خضروات



fats

دهون



milk

لبن

Help your child revise these words.

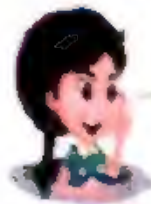
ساعد طفلك في مراجعة هذه الكلمات.

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - First Term 7



## Ask and answer.

اسأل وأجب.



How long is the Sphinx?

كم طول أبو الهول؟



It's seventy-three meters long.

طوله ٧٣ متر.



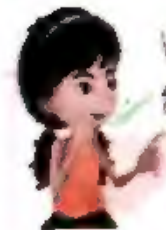
How tall is the Cairo Tower?

كم طول برج القاهرة؟



It's 187 meters tall.

طوله ١٨٧ متر.



Where are you from?

من أين أنت؟

I'm from China.  
I'm Chinese.

أنا من الصين. أنا صيني.



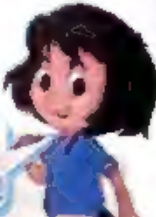
When is your birthday?

متى يوم ميلادك؟



It's on January 19<sup>th</sup>.

إنه في التاسع عشر من يناير.



What did you do yesterday?

ماذا فعلت بالأمس؟



I visited the bazaar,  
I bought a bag!

زرت البازار واشترت حقيبة.



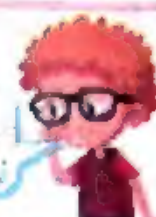
What would you like?

ما تريد؟



I'd like some water,  
please.

أريد بعض الماء من فضلك.



8 Let's remember!

Help your child ask and answer.

ساعد طفلك أن يسأل ويجيب.



## Lesson (2)

## LET'S REMEMBER!

### Months of the year. شهور السنة



### Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past
go يذهب	went
see يرى	saw
buy يشتري	bought
have / has يمتلك	had
am / is يكون	was
are يكونوا	were

Help your child remember months of the year.

AI-BAHER - Connect (4) - First Term 9

ساعد طفلك في تذكر شهور السنة.

# Punctuation Marks

## علامات الترقيم

### Capital letters

- It's sunny.
- Ali - Mona
- Alexandria, Egypt
- I can jump.
- Montaza Palace - the Sphinx

نستخدم الحروف الكبيرة في هذه الحالات:

في بداية الجملة:

مع أسماء الأشخاص:

مع أسماء المدن والدول:

الضمير (I) في أي مكان في الجملة:

مع أسماء الأماكن السياحية:

### Full stop / Period (.)

- It is a cat .

نستخدم النقطة في نهاية الجملة.

### Comma ( , )

نستخدم الفاصلة السفلى (,) عند كتابة قائمة (مجموعة) من الأشياء.

- I bought apples , oranges , bananas and mangoes .

### Apostrophe ( ' )

- This is Ali's book.

نستخدم قبل (s) الملكية.

نستخدم في الاختصارات.

- I'm happy.

### Question Mark ( ? )

- How long is it ?

نستخدم علامة الاستفهام (?) في نهاية السؤال.

### Exclamation mark ( ! )

- What a nice dress !

نستخدم علامة التعجب (!) للتعبير عن الدهشة.

- I feel excited !

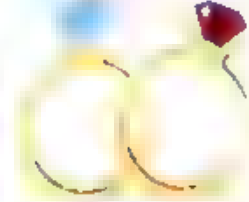




# Activities

1 Look and complete.

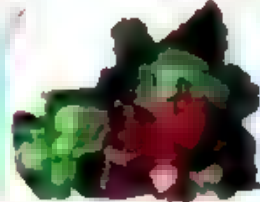
انظر واكمل.



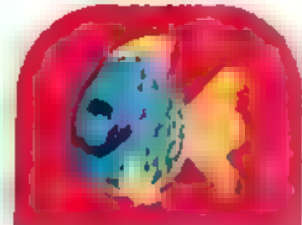
r\_ ngs



f\_ sh



ve\_ etables



J\_ ly



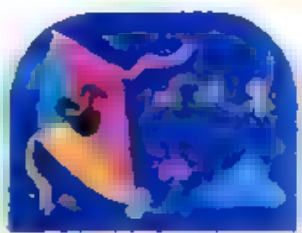
b\_ y



p\_ y



m\_ lk



A\_ gust

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

- What did you do \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
a) now      b) today      c) yesterday      d) tomorrow
- How long \_\_\_\_\_ the bridge?  
a) did      b) is      c) are      d) were
- I am from America. I'm \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) Chinese      b) Japanese      c) Egyptian      d) American
- I \_\_\_\_\_ shopping yesterday.  
a) go      b) going      c) goes      d) went
- She \_\_\_\_\_ her grandma last Friday.  
a) visited      b) visits      c) visit      d) visiting

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

AI-BAHER - Connect (4) - First Term 11

# Unit 1

# I feel good

أشعر أنني (بخير / بحالة جيدة)



**In this unit the student will ...**

في هذه الوحدة الطالب سوف ...

\*listen, read, research, and write about foods and how to keep healthy

يستمع، ويقرأ، ويبحث، ويكتب عن بعض الأطعمة وكيف يبقي سليماً معافاً

\*practice making sentences with 'and' or 'but'

يتدرب على صياغة جمل باستخدام (and) أو (but).

\*read and listen to a Chinese fable.

يقرأ ويستمع إلى حكاية «الأسطورة» صينية.

\*distinguish long and short vowels.

يميز بين الأصوات المنحركة الطويلة والقصيرة.

\*talk about a place in Egypt.

يتحدث عن مكان في مصر.

\*research and make a presentation.

بفهوم يعمل بحث وعرض تقديمي.



# Lesson (1)

# FOOD AND DRINK

Listen and say.

استمع وقل.



chicken

دجاج



milk

حليب



bananas

موز



watermelon

بطيخ



## Food & Drink

الطعام و الشراب



grapes

عنب



sugarcane

قصب السكر



mangoes

مانجو



rice

ارز



potatoes

بطاطس



onions

بصل

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك ان يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

AI-BAHER - Connect (4) - First Term, 13

## Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

Egyptian farmers	الفلاحون المصريون	breakfast	الإفطار	country	دولة
special (adj)	خاص / مميز	lunch	الغداء	ready	جاهز
meals	وجبات	dinner	العشاء	healthy	صحي

## Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

## Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
raise	يربي / raised	produce	ينتج / produce d

## Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
get	يحصل على / got	keep	يربي - يحافظ / kept
feed	يُطعم / fed	make	يصنع - يعد / made
build	يبني / built	grow	يزرع - ينمو / grew

## Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Let's eat.	هيا بنا نأكل.	come from	يأتي من
grow healthier	ينمو بصحة أفضل	Yum!	لذيذا - شهيا
grow rice	يزرع أرزا	What else?	وماذا أيضًا؟
It looks delicious!	يبدو لذيذا!	think about	يفكر في
That's right.	هذا صحيح.	for us	من أجلنا
make some special food for			أعد بعض الطعام المميز لـ

**Note:** We raise animals like chickens, goats and cows.  
We grow plants like rice, tomatoes and onions.



## Lesson (1)

### Listen and read.

استمع والقرأ.



tasty



Mom : Lunch is ready. I made some special food for us.

الغداء جاهز. قمت بإعداد بعض الطعام الخاص لنا.

Maged : Mom, it looks delicious!

أمي، إنه يبدو شهياً

Mom : Which food comes from our country, do you think?

أي طعام يأتي من بلدنا في اعتقادك؟

Maged : I think we grow rice in Egypt.

أعتقد أننا نزرع الأرز في مصر

Mom : Yes, that's right. What else?

نعم، هذا صحيح، وماذا أيضاً؟

Maged : Hmmm, I think we raise chickens in Egypt.

همم، أعتقد أننا نربي الدجاج في مصر.

Mom : Yes, and tomatoes and onions. Egyptian farmers produce many things you see on this table. Let's eat!

نعم، وطماطم وبصل، المزارعون المصريون ينتجون الكثير من الأشياء التي تراها على هذه الطاولة، هيا نأكل!

Maged : Yum!

لذيذاً



What foods do we produce in Egypt?

ما الأطعمة التي ننتجها في مصر؟

We produce vegetables like onions, potatoes, and tomatoes.

نحن ننتج الخضروات مثل البصل والبطاطس والطماطم.



Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - First Term 15



## Activities

### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I think we grow ..... in Egypt  
a) corn                      b) rice                      c) cotton                      d) wheat
2. Egyptian ..... grow many vegetables  
a) doctors                      b) vets                      c) teachers                      d) farmers
3. Egyptian farmers ..... chickens  
a) raise                      b) seed                      c) grow                      d) look
4. They keep ..... to get milk  
a) fish                      b) birds                      c) cows                      d) snakes

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The food looks .....  
a) happy                      b) sad                      c) delicious                      d) fast
2. Farmers keep chickens to get eggs and .....  
a) milk                      b) meat                      c) skin                      d) honey
3. Farmers grow .....  
a) birds                      b) cows                      c) chickens                      d) rice
4. Potatoes and onions are .....  
a) fruits                      b) birds                      c) vegetables                      d) animals
5. We ..... chickens in Egypt  
a) come                      b) grow                      c) play                      d) raise
6. We eat ..... in the morning  
a) lunch                      b) supper                      c) breakfast                      d) dinner
7. We produce vegetables like ..... in Egypt  
a) onions                      b) bananas                      c) watermelons                      d) oranges
8. We raise animals ..... goats and cows in Egypt  
a) like                      b) as                      c) example                      d) look
9. A lot of food comes ..... Egypt  
a) from                      b) off                      c) on                      d) over



## Lesson (1)

### 3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

grapes - chicken - sugar - produce - delicious

Fruits grow in different times of the year. We 1) ... different kinds of them in Egypt. Mangoes and 2) ... grow in summer. We get 3) ... from sugarcane. Fruits are 4) ...

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص واجيب عن الأسئلة.

Egyptian farmers are very important to us. They produce many things for us. They can grow rice, potatoes, onions, and sugarcane. Farmers in Egypt also raise many animals such as; goats, sheep, cows and chickens. We can get meat and eggs from chickens. Egyptian vegetables and fruits are very delicious.

#### A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Egyptian ... are very important to us.  
a) doctors      b) teachers      c) farmers      d) carpenters
2. They ... many things for us.  
a) produce      b) get      c) cook      d) come

#### B) Answer the following questions.

3. Why are farmers very important?
4. What kind of animals do Egyptian farmers raise?

### 5 Punctuate the following sentence.

ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

what animals do farmers raise in egypt?

## Lesson (2)

## I AM HEALTHY

### Vocabulary

Healthy	صحي	Unhealthy	غير صحي
play football	يلعب كرة القدم	drink	يشرب مياه غارية
play basketball	يلعب كرة السلة	eat a burger	يأكل ساندوتش برجر
do homework	يقوم بعمل الواجب المدرسي	eat candy	يأكل الحلوى
eat fruit	يأكل ثمينة	play video games	يلعب ألعاب الفيديو

### Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

#### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

#### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
walk	يمشي walked	do	يفعل did
talk	يتحدث talked	hurt	يؤذي - يؤلم hurt
practice	يتدرب practiced	hit	يضرب hit

### Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

on the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	in the park	في الحديقة
once a week	مرة في الأسبوع	change into	يتغير - يغير إلى
twice a week	مرتين في الأسبوع	drink more water	يشرب مياه أكثر
drink fresh juices	يشرب عصائر عذبة	do a sport	يلعب رياضة
go walking	يذهب للتنجشة	on Saturday	في يوم السبت



## Lesson (2)

### Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

**Do you think you're healthy, Judy?** هل تعتقد أنك بصحة جيدة يا جودي؟

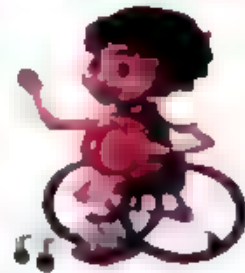
Yes, I do. I do a lot of sport at school. On the weekend, I walk to my grandma's house with my family. I really like walking because I can talk to my mom and dad. We can see the different houses and shops. I don't eat candy, but I like fruit. My favorite fruits are bananas and watermelon. My mom makes an awesome banana milkshake!



نعم، أنا أفعل. أنا أفعل الكثير من الرياضة في المدرسة. في العطلة الأسبوعية أسير إلى منزل جدي مع عائلتي. أنا أحب المشي لأنني أستطيع التحدث إلى والدي. يمكننا رؤية المنازل والمتاجر المختلفة. أنا لا أأكل الحلوى، لكنني أحب الفواكه. فواكه المفضلة لدي هي الموز والمشمش. أمي تصنع عصير الموز الرائع!

**Do you think you're healthy, Adam?** هل تعتقد أنك بصحة جيدة يا آدم؟

Yes. I am in a wheelchair basketball team at school. We practice three times every week. I drink , but I want to drink more water. I don't play video games because I'm very busy. I play basketball and I play football in the park.



نعم، أنا هستم في فريق كرة سلة في كرسي متحرك في المدرسة. نلتزم ثلاث مرات كل أسبوع. أنا أشرب العصير، لكنني أريد شرب المزيد من المياه. أنا لا أألعاب الفيديو لأنني مشغول جداً. أنا أألعاب كرة السلة وكرة القدم في الحديقة.

**Do you think you're healthy, Dareen?** هل تعتقد أنك بصحة جيدة يا دارين؟

Yes, I think I'm healthy. My mom and I go walking in the desert with my dad. Dad is a scientist and he likes looking at animals and plants. We go with him every weekend. It's very interesting, but it's very hot sometimes! I only drink water because I don't like . I love burgers, but I only eat one a week. My mom makes yummy salads.



نعم، أنا أفكر أنني بصحة جيدة. أمي وأبي وأمي نذهب للمشي في الصحراء مع والدي. والدي عالم يحب دراسة الحيوانات والنباتات. نذهب معه كل أسبوع. إنه أمر ممتع للغاية، ولكن أحياناً يكون حار جداً! أنا فقط أشرب المياه لأنني لا أحب العصير. أنا أحب البرجر، لكنني أأكل واحد فقط كل أسبوع. أمي تصنع السلطات اللذيذة.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ

(AI-BAHER - Connect (4) - First Term

# Language Focus

## Conjunctions أدوات الربط

**and** (و)

We use **and** to add two ideas together.

نستخدم (and) لربط فكرتين معاً.



I eat vegetables, **and** I exercise.

**but** (لكن)

We use **but** to contrast two ideas.

نستخدم (but) لربط فكرتين متناقضتين



I want to play football, **but** I hurt my leg.

**Look and read.**

نظروا قرا.

I practice basketball on Wednesday,  
and I walk home from school every day.



I love playing video games, **but**  
I only play them on Saturday



## Lesson (2)

① Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I don't eat candy, I like fruit.  
a) but                      b) and                      c) so                      d) because
2. He doesn't drink cola, he drinks fresh juice.  
a) so                      b) or                      c) but                      d) and
3. She plays basketball football in the park.  
a) because                      b) and                      c) so                      d) but
4. Dad is a scientist he likes looking at animals and plants.  
a) or                      b) and                      c) because                      d) but
5. It's a very interesting place, it's very hot sometimes!  
a) or                      b) because                      c) but                      d) and
6. I love burgers, I only eat them once a week.  
a) and                      b) or                      c) because                      d) but
7. Fatima loves ice cream chocolate.  
a) but                      b) and                      c) so                      d) or
8. My dad is Egyptian, his dad is French.  
a) and                      b) but                      c) because                      d) so
9. Waleed speaks English, he can't speak Chinese.  
a) or                      b) and                      c) so                      d) but
10. I eat fruit I exercise.  
a) and                      b) so                      c) but                      d) or

② Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. Farmers produce tomatoes (but) potatoes.
2. It's a very interesting café, (and) it's very hot sometimes.
3. I love video games, (and) I only play them on Sunday.
4. I like fruit (but) vegetables.
5. I like reading stories, (and) I don't like watching TV.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - First Term



# Activities

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 I'm in a wheelchair . team at school  
a) football      b) handball      c) basketball      d) volleyball
- 2 We practice times every week  
a) three      b) four      c) five      d) six
- 3 I don't drink , but I want to drink more water  
a) milk      b) cola      c) tea      d) coffee
- 4 I play basketball in the  
a) club      b) school      c) street      d) park

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 I like fruits and vegetables because they are  
a) healthy      b) unhealthy      c) bad      d) scary
- 2 Football is my favorite  
a) food      b) drink      c) sport      d) animal
- 3 Mona doesn't drink because it's unhealthy  
a) cola      b) water      c) milk      d) juice
- 4 My favorite are bananas and watermelon  
a) vegetables      b) drinks      c) fruits      d) animals

## 3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

interesting - water - weekend - scientist - makes

My mom and I go walking in the desert with my dad. Dad  
a 1) and he likes looking at animals and plants.  
We go with him every 2) , but it's very hot sometimes.  
I only drink 3) because I don't like . I love burger  
but I only eat one a week. My mom 4) yummy salad.



## Lesson (2)

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

I'm Mahmoud. I do a lot of sports at school. On the weekend, I walk to my grandma's house with my family. I really like walking because I can talk to my mom and dad. We can see the different house and shops. I don't eat candy, but I like fruit. My favorite fruits are bananas and watermelon. My mom makes an awesome banana milkshake!

#### A) Choose the correct answer.

- Mahmoud do a lot of sports at  
a) park      b) school      c) zoo      d) garden
- Mahmoud walks to his \_\_\_\_\_ house with his family.  
a) grandma's      b) aunt's      c) uncle's      d) friend's

#### B) Answer the following questions.

- Why does Mahmoud like walking?
- What are Mahmoud's favorite fruits?

### 5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

- Ali wants to be healthy, (and) he doesn't like vegetables.
- I want to play basketball, (and) I hurt my hand.
- I can play video games but football.
- Dad is a scientist (but) he likes looking at animals and plants.
- I love burgers, (and) I only eat one a week.

### 6 Punctuate the following sentence.

ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

do you think you're healthy

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - First Term

## Lesson (3)

# THE EMPTY POT: A FOLKTALE FROM CHINA

### Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

emperor  
palace

إمبراطور

قصر

competition  
gardener

سابقة

بستاني

### Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

China

الصين

next

التالي

only

فقط

important

هام

pot

إتاء

seed

بذرة

everyone

كل واحد

garden

حديقة

empty

فارغ

beautiful

جميل

dead

ميت

plant

بوت

winning

الفوز

honesty

أمانته

honest

لين

### Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Present	Past	Present	Past
describe	described	happen	happened
lie	lied	try	tried
plant	planted	water	watered

### Important expressions and prepositions

تعابيرات وحروف جر هامة

grow into

تصبح look after

يعتني بـ

bring... back

يعيد At the palace

في القصر

good at

يعمل جيداً work hard

يعمل بجهد

### Definitions

تعريفات

emperor

is someone who is like a king

إمبراطور

palace

is where an emperor lives

قصر

honest

is someone who doesn't lie

لين

competition

is when someone tries to win

سابقة



### Lesson (3)

#### Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ

Cheng lived long ago in China.  
The most important man in  
China was the emperor. He  
lived in a beautiful palace. One  
day the emperor said, "There  
will be a competition. I will  
give a seed to each gardener.



The one who can grow the most beautiful plant from the seed will be  
the next emperor."

كان هناك منافسة بين البستانيين في الصين. أعطى الإمبراطور بذرة لكل بستاني. من يستطيع أن ينمو من البذرة نباتاً جميلاً سيكون الإمبراطور التالي.

"Take the pot and the seed. Plant it." says the emperor. "Make it grow  
into a beautiful plant. Then bring the plant back to me."

Cheng was very good at growing things and looking after his garden.  
He put the seed in the sun and gave it water.

But nothing happened. Cheng tried for weeks but no plant grew

كان الإمبراطور قد أعطى البذرة للبستاني تشينج. كان تشينج جيداً جداً في زراعته. حاول تشينج أن ينمو من البذرة نباتاً جميلاً، لكنه لم يفلح. حاول تشينج لأسابيع ولكن لا شيء ينمو.

The other gardeners had plants that grew

At the palace, all the gardeners have beautiful plants.

"Where is your plant?" the emperor asks Cheng.

"I worked very hard. I watered it every day," says Cheng.

"But it didn't grow." "Then you win!" says the emperor. "The seeds  
I gave everyone were dead. The seeds cannot grow. Only you are  
good and honest. So you will be the next emperor!"

كان لدى البستانيين الآخرين نباتات جميلة. سأل الإمبراطور تشينج: "أين نباتك؟" "عملت بجد جداً. سقيته كل يوم"، قال تشينج. "لكنها لم تنمو". قال الإمبراطور: "سواء البذور التي أعطيتها للجميع ميتة. البذور لا يمكن أن تنمو. أنت فقط الجيد والأمين. لذلك سوف تكون الإمبراطور القادم!"

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - First Term 25

## Pronunciation

# Vowel Sounds

### Short vowels



bag

حقيبة

The letter (a) makes the sound /æ/.



mom

أم

The letter (o) makes the sound /ɒ/.



mix

يختط

The letter (i) makes the sound /ɪ/.

### Long vowels



cake

كعك

The letters (a - e) make the sound /eɪ/.



nose

أنف

The letters (o - e) make the sound /əʊ/.



rice

ارز

The letters (i - e) make the sound /aɪ/.

## Word Formation



The prefix "re-" means "again".

البادئة "re" تعني «مرة أخرى».

reclean

يعيد تنظيف

"re-"

again

redo

يعيد عمل

remake

يعيد صنع

repaint

يعيد لوان

### Listen and say.

استمع وقل.

- 1- He painted his house again.
- 2- She cleaned her bike again.
- 3- He made pizza again.
- 4- She did her homework again.

He repainted his house.

She recleaned her bike.

He remade pizza.

She redid her homework.



## CLIL: Math

### Comparing large digits : Ascending order

مقارنة الأرقام الكبيرة: الترتيب التصاعدي

#### Key vocabulary

hundred

مائة

thousand

ألف

million

مليون

ascending

تصاعدي

sign

علامة

digits

أرقام



greater than

أكبر من



less than

صغير من

equal to

يساوي

#### ① Reading large digits

قراءة الأعداد الكبيرة

324, 268					
Hundred thousands مئات الألوف	Ten thousands عشرات الألوف	Thousands آلاف	Hundreds مئات	Tens عشرات	Ones أحاد
3	2	4	2	6	8
3 hundred thousand 300,000	twenty thousand 20,000	4 thousand 4,000	2 hundred 200	sixty 60	eight 8

① (544 432) five hundred, forty-four thousand, and four hundred thirty-two.

② (976,421 357) nine hundred, seventy-six million, four hundred twenty-one thousand and three hundred fifty-seven.

Help your child read large numbers.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الأرقام الكبيرة

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - First Term

## ② Comparing numbers مقارنه الأرقام

### ➔ Compare 4,134 and 4,212.

**Step (1)** Begin at the left. Compare (4, 134 / 4,212)

Both numbers have 4 thousands.

**Step (2)** Find the first place where the digits are different.

Compare (4, 134 / 4,212)

1 hundred is less than 2 hundred

So,  $4,134 < 4,212$  or  $4,212 > 4,134$

## ③ Ascending order: الترتيب التصاعدي

➔ In ascending order, we order the numbers from the smallest to the greatest.

في الترتيب التصاعدي، نرتب لأرقام من الأصغر إلى الأكبر.

e.g.  $544,432 - 179,990 - 226,344$

$179,990 < 226,344 < 544,432$

### Arrange these numbers in an ascending order.

1 87,909 - 87,092 - 87,990

2 233,346 - 10,009 - 20,665

3 19,313 - 20,310 - 20,000

## Note:

The numerical digits we use today 1,2 and 3 are based on the Hindu-Arabic numerical system. This system was developed over 1000 years ago.

الأرقام التي نستخدمها هذه الأيام (1 و 2 و 3) جاءت من نظام العدد العربي الهندي، وهذا النظام تطور على مدار الألف عام الماضية.





# Activities

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. Our house is very old. We want to ii  
 a) repaint      b) redo      c) reread      d) remake
2. The boys dropped juice on the floor. We need to  
 the room.  
 a) redo      b) reclean      c) rebuild      d) reread
3. His homework isn't correct. He will ii  
 a) repaint      b) rebuild      c) reclean      d) redo
4. An emperor is someone who is like a  
 a) teacher      b) king      c) doctor      d) farmer
5. A palace is where an emperor  
 a) travels      b) lives      c) plays      d) visits
6. Someone who is honest doesn't  
 a) sleep      b) lie      c) lay      d) speak
7. In a competition someone tries to  
 a) eat      b) win      c) sleep      d) lose

**2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.**

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

**gardener - palace - competition - emperor - help**

Cheng lived long ago in China. The most important man in China was the 1) . He lived in a beautiful 2) . One day the emperor said, "There will be a 3) . I will give a seed to each 4) . The one who can grow the most beautiful plant from the seed will be the next emperor."

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

(AI-BAHER - Connect (4) - First Term 29

**3 Read the text and answer the questions.**

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة.

One day, an emperor in China gave the gardeners some seeds to grow. The emperor told the gardeners that the one who could grow the most beautiful plant, he would be the next emperor. Cheng was one of the gardeners. Cheng was very good at growing things and looking after his garden. He put the seed in the sun and gave it water. But nothing happened. Cheng tried for weeks but no plant grew. The other gardeners had plants that grew. At the end, Cheng won because the seeds were dead. Only Cheng is honest and good. So, he would be the next emperor.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. An emperor in \_\_\_\_\_ gave the gardeners some seeds to grow.  
a) Egypt      b) Japan      c) China      d) France
2. Only Cheng is \_\_\_\_\_ and good.  
a) honest      b) bad      c) liar      d) beautiful

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. Why didn't Cheng's seed grow? .....
4. Who would be the next emperor? .....

**4 Put the correct sign (>, < or =):**

1. 655,534 ..... 698,881
2. 10,000,000 ..... ten million
3. 100,000,000 ..... 99,999,999

**5 Read and write the digits in words:**

1. 561,982: .....
2. 30,120: .....
3. 98,500: .....

# Lessons (4 & 5)

## WRITING

### Key vocabulary كلمات اساسية

land	أرض	catch	بصطاد
live	يعيش	governorate	محافظة
famous for	مشهور بـ	fisherman	صياد

### Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

guava	جوافة	sheep	حروف - غنم
lemons	ليمون	wheat	قمح
goats	ماعز	cheese	جبنة
people	ناس	grapes	عنب
part	جزء	nutrients	مواد - عناصر غذائية
information	معلومات	Damietta	دمياط
sugarcane	نصب السكر	Domiat	دمياط
produce	نتج	Upper Egypt	شمال مصر
cotton	القطن	corn	الذرة

### Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وادوات ارتباط

thousands of	الآلاف من	full of	ملي بـ
rich in	غني بـ	what I know	ما أعرفه
a half million	نصف مليون	live in	يعيش في

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - First Term



Look and read.

## Food from Damietta

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. The farmers can grow rice, tomatoes, potatoes, wheat, lemons, grapes and guavas. Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea. Cows, goats, and sheep live in Damietta governorate, too. Domiati cheese is very famous.



About one and a half million people live in this part of Egypt. Life is good in Damietta!

الأرض في محافظة دمياط مليئة بالمواد الغذائية يستطيع المزارعون زراعة الأرز والقمح والبطيخ والليمون والعنب والخوخ. يصطاد الصيادون آلاف الأسماك من البحر. تعيش الأغنياء والفقراء في محافظة دمياط أيضاً الحنة الدمياطي مشهورة جداً يعيش حوالي مليون ونصف مليون شخص في هذا الجزء من مصر. الحناد حده في دمياط



## Research Minya



K

What I Know

Farmers in  
Minya grow  
sugarcane.

W

What I Want to Know

other crops

L

What I Learned

the  
population  
(السكان)

## Lessons (4 & 5)

### Ask and answer.

Where is Minya?

أين تقع محافظة المنيا؟

It's in Upper Egypt.

المنيا في الصعيد مصر

What do farmers produce in Minya?

ماذا ينتج المزارعون في المنيا؟

They produce cotton and bananas.

إنهم ينتجون القطن والموز

What food comes from Minya?

ما الطعام الذي يأتي من المنيا؟

Wheat and corn.

القمح والذرة

Who lives there?

من يعيش هناك؟

About 5.8 million Egyptians.

حوالي 5.8 مليون مصري

## Your turn



Choose another governorate, research and write.

اختر محافظة أخرى. ثم ابحث واكتب عليها.



What I Know



What I Want to Know



What I Learned

Help your child ask and answer.  
Help your child do a research.

ساعد طفلك أن يسأل ويجيب  
ساعد طفلك أن يجري بحثاً.

AI-BAHER - Connect (4) - First Term 33



# Activities

## ① Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I live in .....  
a) Cairo      b) Giza      c) Minya      d) Damietta
2. .... can grow cotton, corn, wheat, dates and sugarcane.  
a) Teachers      b) Farmers      c) Doctors      d) Fishermen
3. It's famous for ..... honey.  
a) pink      b) white      c) red      d) black
4. About six million ..... live in Minya.  
a) people      b) birds      c) animals      d) plants

## ② Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Adam lives in Damietta .....  
a) governorate      b) park      c) school      d) library
2. Damietta is famous ..... Domiati cheese.  
a) on .....      b) in .....      c) at .....      d) for .....
3. The farmers ..... tomatoes and potatoes.  
a) read      b) write      c) grow      d) play
4. Goats, cows and sheep are .....  
a) colors      b) animals      c) sports      d) birds

## ③ Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

fishermen - fish - cheese - Damietta - farmers

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. The

- 1) ..... can grow rice, tomatoes, wheat and grapes.  
Fishermen catch thousands of 2) ..... in the sea. Cows,  
goats and sheep live in 3) ..... governorate. Domiati  
4) ..... is very famous.



## Lessons (4 & 5)

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. The farmers can grow rice, tomatoes, potatoes, wheat, lemons, grapes, and guavas.

Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea. Cows, goats, and sheep live in Damietta governorate too. Domiati cheese is very famous.

About one and a half million people live in this part of Egypt. Life is good in Damietta!

#### A) Choose the correct answer.

- The text is about ..... governorate.  
a) Damietta    b) Cairo    c) Giza    d) Minya
- ..... catch thousands of fish in the sea.  
a) Fishermen    b) Teachers    c) Doctors    d) Farmers

#### B) Answer the following questions.

- What can farmers grow in Damietta?
- How many people live in Damietta?

### 5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

**Damietta governorate**

Guiding words:

(Damietta - grow - fish - cheese)



# Review on Unit (1)

## Food & Drink



chicken



grapes



milk



onions



rice



potatoes



bananas



mangoes



sugarcane



watermelon

I eat vegetables  
and I exercise.



I don't eat candy.  
but I like fruit.



## I feel good

### Short vowels



bag



mom



mix

### Long vowels



cake



nose



rice

### Prefix "re-"

repaint

reclean

remake

redo

يعيد تلوين

يعيد تنظيف

يعيد تصنيع

يعيد عمل شيء

- Ascending order is from the smallest  
to the greatest.

87 092 - 87.909 - 87.990



greater than

أكبر من



less than

أصغر من



equal to

يساوي



## Writing Corner



Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

### *Farmers in Egypt*

Farmers in Egypt do a very important job. They raise chickens and sheep to get meat and eggs. They raise cows to get milk. They make cheese and butter from milk. They grow vegetables like onions and potatoes. They also grow fruit like mangoes, grapes and bananas. They use the water from the Nile to water the plants.

### *Healthy food*

Vegetables and fruits are healthy food. Many people love to eat fruits but they don't eat a lot of vegetables. We grow many kinds of fruits and vegetables in Egypt. We grow rice, onions and oranges. We should eat fruits and vegetables every day.

### *Damietta governorate*

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. The farmers can grow rice, tomatoes, potatoes, wheat, lemons, grapes, and guavas. Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea. Cows, goats, and sheep live in Damietta governorate too. Domiati cheese is very famous.



# Dictation on Unit (1)

## Unit (1)

موزة	دجاجة
عنب	مانجو
بطيخ	قصب السكر
بصل	بطاطس
أرز	لبن
فلاح	يوزي

## Unit (1)

يلعب كرة القدم	يشرب مياه غازية
يلعب كرة السلة	يأكل سنلوش برجر
يقوم بعمل الواجب المنزلي	يأكل العنوى
يأكل الفاكهة	يلعب ألعاب الفيديو

## Unit (1)

إمبراطور	الصين
قصر	بنزة
مسابقة	نبت
يستاق	نمين

## Unit (1)

نمياط	بصطاد
نمياط	عروق
حن	لمح
معالجة	صمغ سمك
مشهور	زهر



# Activities on Unit (1)

**(1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

استمع وصحح دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

1. My \_\_\_\_\_ made special food for us.  
a) mom                      b) sister                      c) grandma                      d) aunt
2. It looks \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) beautiful                      b) delicious                      c) bad                      d) handsome
3. Egyptian \_\_\_\_\_ produce many kinds of fruits and vegetables.  
a) teachers                      b) fishermen                      c) farmers                      d) doctors
4. My mom says we also grow \_\_\_\_\_ in Egypt.  
a) wheat                      b) corn                      c) carrots                      d) rice

**(2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. A \_\_\_\_\_ is where an emperor lives.  
a) farm                      b) park                      c) zoo                      d) palace
2. Farmers grow a lot of food for us to \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) eat                      b) grow                      c) raise                      d) keep
3. We get \_\_\_\_\_ and meat from chickens.  
a) milk                      b) eggs                      c) rice                      d) potatoes
4. Cheng wanted to \_\_\_\_\_ the seeds to grow.  
a) redo                      b) replant                      c) rebuild                      d) reclean

**(3) Read and complete the text with words from the box.**

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع

cheese - rice - Damietta - Fishermen - farmers

The land in Damietta is rich in nutrients. The farmers can grow \_\_\_\_\_, tomatoes, potatoes, wheat, lemons, grapes and guavas. \_\_\_\_\_ catch fish in the sea. Domiat \_\_\_\_\_ is very famous. Life is good in \_\_\_\_\_.

## Unit (1)

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Many foods come from Egypt. Egypt is famous for growing rice. We produce vegetables like onions, potatoes, and tomatoes. Egypt produces fruits like mangoes, bananas, and watermelons. Egyptian food is delicious. Egyptian farmers raise animals on their farms. They raise chickens, goats, and cows.

#### A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Egypt is famous for growing  
a) bean      b) rice      c) wheat      d) corn
2. Egyptian food is  
a) kind      b) happy      c) bad      d) delicious

#### B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 Where do many foods come from?
- 4 What do Egyptian farmers raise?

### 5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

- 1 I don't drink (but) other unhealthy food
- 2 I don't eat unhealthy food, (and) I eat healthy food
- 3 I do exercise (but) I study hard
- 4 Cheng watered the seeds, (and) they didn't grow

### 6 Punctuate the following sentence.

ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

- i live in damietta.

### 7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Healthy food

Guiding words:

( healthy - vegetables - cook - chicken - fruit )



# Al-Azhar Corner

**1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.**

اقرأ واكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع

Which - rice - Lunch - raise

- Mom : 1) ..... is ready.  
 Maged : It looks delicious!  
 Mom : 2) ..... food comes from our country?  
 Maged : I think we grow 3, ..... in Egypt  
 Mom : Why do farmers 4) ..... chickens?  
 Maged : They raise chickens to get eggs and meat.

**2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.**

اقرأ واكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع

important - healthy - sports - food

- Dad : Do you think you're 1 ..... , Heba?  
 Heba : Yes, I do a lot of 2) .....  
 Dad : I think it's 3) ..... to do sports.  
 Heba : Yes, I also eat healthy 4) .....

**3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.**

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة

1. produce - tomatoes - We - potatoes - and - .
2. chickens - in - Farmers - raise - Egypt - .
- 3 the - will - Cheng - be - next - emperor - .
- 4 healthy - do - What - you - things - do - ?
- 5 person - not - The honest - does - lie - .

Help your child deal with such questions.

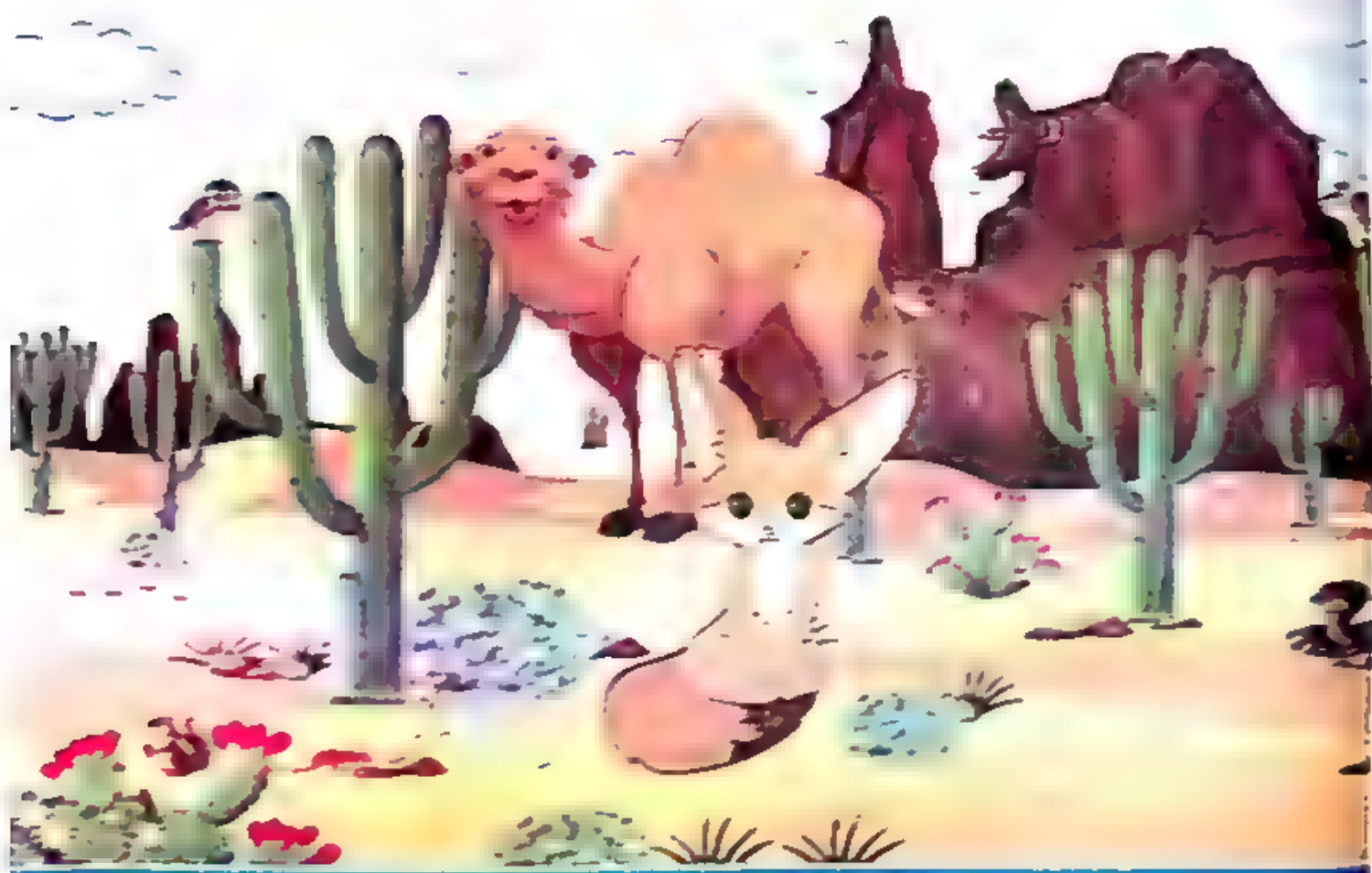
ساعد طفلك ان يتعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - First Term 41

# Unit 2

## Desert animals

الحيوانات الصحراوية



In this unit the student will ...

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| • will be able to identify the animals in the desert    | • will be able to describe the animals in the desert    |
| • will be able to identify the plants in the desert     | • will be able to describe the plants in the desert     |
| • will be able to identify the weather in the desert    | • will be able to describe the weather in the desert    |
| • will be able to identify the people in the desert     | • will be able to describe the people in the desert     |
| • will be able to identify the food in the desert       | • will be able to describe the food in the desert       |
| • will be able to identify the clothing in the desert   | • will be able to describe the clothing in the desert   |
| • will be able to identify the activities in the desert | • will be able to describe the activities in the desert |



# ANIMALS IN EGYPT

## Egyptian animals

حيوانات مصرية



parrot

ببغاء



crocodile

تمسك



butterfly

فراشة



crocodile

تمسك



eagle

نسر



camel

فيل



fox

فيل



spider

عنكبوت



snake

فيل

Ministry of Education, Egypt

LEARNER - Connect & - Free Term 43



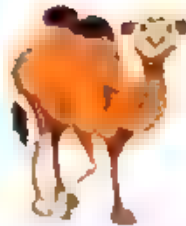
## Unit (2)

### Adjectives



scary

مزعج - مخيف



huge

ضخم



dangerous

خطير



cute

جميل

### Extra vocabulary كلمات اضافية

desert

صحراء country

دولة

important

هام helpful

معاون - مفيد

ugly

فبيح job

وظيفة / مهنة

### Conjugation of verbs صرفت - مثل

Present	Past	Present	Past
control	سحكم controlled	like	يحب liked
agree	وافق agreed	think	يعتقد ي فكر thought
live	يعش lived	eat	ياكل ate

### Important expressions and prepositions

I think ....

أنا أعتقد .... What about ...?

ماذا عن ... ؟

That's true.

هذا صحيح. look at

ينظر إلى

## Did you know?

The Sahara Desert covers large parts of ten countries in Africa. It is very big, but Antarctica is bigger!

الصحراء الكبرى تغطي أجزاء كبيرة من عشر دول في إفريقيا. وهي كبيرة جدًا ولكن القارة القطبية الجنوبية أكبر.

## Lesson (1)

### Listen and read.

Mom : Look at all these animals that live in our country.

انظروا الى كل هذه الحيوانات التي تعيش في بلدنا

Sara : Look at the crocodile, it's huge!

انظروا الى التمساح، إنه ضخم.

Tarek : Huge and scary!

ضخم ومخيف

Sara : I think the spider is scarier.

أعتقد أن العنكبوت مخيف أكثر.

Mom : Yeah, but spiders are very helpful. They eat insects. Farmers like spiders.

نعم ولكن العنكبوت مفيد جدًا. إنهم يأكلون الحشرات. المزارعون يحبون العنكبوت.

Sara : OK, what about the snake and the crocodile? They're dangerous, aren't they?

حسنًا، وماذا عن الثعبان والتمساح؟ إنهما خطيران، أليس كذلك؟

Mom : Yes, that's true, but they do a very important job. They eat insects, birds and lizards. This controls the number of these small animals. We sometimes think some animals are scary or ugly, but they are all important.

نعم، هذا صحيح، ولكنهم يقومون بعمل مهم جدًا. فهم يأكلون الحشرات والطيور

والزواحف. وهذا يتحكم في عدد هذه الحيوانات الصغيرة. أحيانًا نعتقد أن بعض الحيوانات

مخيفة أو قبيحة ولكنها جميعًا ذو أهمية



Which animals are dangerous?

أي الحيوانات خطيرة؟

I think crocodiles are scary, but they control the numbers of small animals

أعتقد أن التمساح مخيف، لكنه يتحكم في عدد الحيوانات الصغيرة



Help your child listen and read

ساعد طفلك أن يسمع ويقرأ

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - First Term (45)



# Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وطبع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Some animals are \_\_\_\_\_ but they are important.  
a) scary      b) huge      c) cute      d) small
2. The spiders are very helpful to .....  
a) teachers      b) farmers      c) doctors      d) vets
3. Snakes and \_\_\_\_\_ are dangerous.  
a) dolphins      b) starfish      c) jellyfish      d) crocodiles
4. We sometimes think some animals are scary or .....  
a) small      b) cute      c) ugly      d) dangerous

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

animals - crocodiles - scary - important

There are lots of animals living in our country. Sometimes we think some animals are \_\_\_\_\_ or ugly, but they are all important. Snakes and \_\_\_\_\_ are very dangerous, but on the other hand, they do a very \_\_\_\_\_ job. They eat insects, birds, and lizards. This controls the number of these small \_\_\_\_\_.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Crocodiles are \_\_\_\_\_ animals.  
a) safe      b) small      c) dangerous      d) cute
2. Crocodiles aren't small. They are .....  
a) nice      b) small      c) cute      d) huge
3. The snake is ..... I don't like it.  
a) cute      b) scary      c) small      d) nice
4. Spiders eat .....  
a) camels      b) snakes      c) crocodiles      d) insects

46 Unit (2) Desert animals

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



## Lesson (1)

5. All animals are

- a) nice      b) cute      c) scary      d) important

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة

There are many animals in our country. All animals are very important. I think spiders are scary, but they are helpful. They eat insects so farmers like spiders. Crocodiles and snakes are dangerous, but they do a very important job. They eat insects, birds, and lizards. This controls the number of these small animals. We sometimes think some animals are scary or ugly, but they're all important.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. The text is about

- a) plants      b) animals      c) stars      d) people

2. Spiders eat insects so \_\_\_\_\_ like them.

- a) farmers      b) teachers      c) doctors      d) vets

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. Are all animals very important?

4. Why are crocodiles and snakes important?

**5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

**Animals**

Guiding words.

(country - animals - crocodiles - spiders - snakes)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - First Term (47)

# AMAZING DESERT ANIMALS

## Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

hump	سنام	fur	لرو
feet	أقدام / خفين	sand	رمل
amazing	مذهل	perfect	مناسب / مثالي
delicious	لذيذ	flat	سطح / مستو
beautiful	جميلة	desert	صحراء

## Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

make clothes	يصنع ملابس	grass	عشب
elephant	فيل	surprising	مفاجئ - مدهش
fresh water	ماء عذب	noisy	مزعج - صاخب
special	مميز / خاص	strong	قوي
large	كبير / ضخيم	giraffe	زرافة
without	بدون	hippo	قوس النهر

## Conjugation of verbs

تعريف الفعل

Present	Past	Present	Past
carry	يحمل / carried	come	يأتي / came
cross	يعبر / crossed	eat	ياكل / ate
sink	يفوقس / sank	drink	يشرب / drank

## Important expressions and prepositions

عبارات مهمة و介词

get angry	يغضب	perfect for the desert	مثالي للصحراء
Be careful!	كن حذرا	for a long time	لعدة ضويلة
special ways	طرق خاصة	live without	يعيش بدون
look after	يعني بـ	stop .... from	يمنع من

## Lesson (2)

### Look and read.

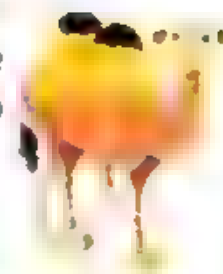
انظر واقرأ.

## Camels

Camels are amazing! They're beautiful, strong animals. They help us to carry things and people to cross the desert. Their milk is delicious. We can use their fur to make clothes!

Camels are perfect for the desert. Here's why.

الجمال مذهلة! إنها حيوانات جميلة وقوية. وهي تساعدنا في حمل الأشياء والأشخاص لعبور الصحراء. لبنها لذيذ. يمكننا استخدام فرائها لصنع ملابس. الجمال مثالية للصحراء. إليك الأسباب.



Camels have large, flat feet so they don't sink in the sand.



Camels can live without water for a long time.



الجمال لديها أقدام كبيرة مسطحة لذلك لا تغوص في الرمال.

يمكن للجمال العيش بدون ماء لفترة طويلة.

Camels have special ways to close their noses and eyes to stop the sand from coming in.

الجمال لديهم طرق خاصة لفتح وإغلاق أنوفهم وعيونهم لمنع الرمال من الدخول فيها.



But be careful! Camels are very noisy and they can spit.

ولكن كن حذرا! الجمال صاخب جدا ويمكنهم التقيؤ.

## Horses

Horses have large beautiful eyes.

الحصان لديها عيون كبيرة وجميلة.

Horses can live in the desert, but they need people to look after them.

يمكن للحصان العيش في الصحراء، لكنهم يحتاجون إلى الناس لرعايتهم.

Horses eat grass and drink fresh water.

الحصان يأكل العشب ويشرب مياه عذبة.

Horse



Camel



How tall is it?

كم طوله؟ 1.4 - 1.8 m

1.8 - 2.0 m

How heavy is it?

كم وزنه؟ 380 - 550 kg

400 - 650 kg

How fast is it?

كم سرعته؟ 88 kph

65 kph

How long does it live?

كم مدة حياته؟ 25 - 30 years

40 years

Help your child look and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويقرأ.

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - First Term (49)



# Language Focus

## Comparative Adjectives صفات المقارنة

### Usage:

- We use comparative adjectives to compare two people or two things. نستخدم صفات المقارنة لمقارن بين شخصين أو شيئين.

### Short adjectives

الصفات القصيرة تتكون من مقطع واحد.

### Form:

adj. (الصفة) + er + than

strong

stronger than

old

older than

e.g. A mouse is smaller than an elephant.



### Spelling rules

- 1- Short adjectives ending in (-e), only add (r) to the adjective.

مع الصفات القصيرة المنتهية بـ (e)، نضيف فقط (r) للصفة.

nice

nicer than

e.g. The goat is nicer than the donkey.



## Lesson (2)

### 2- Short adjectives ending in one vowel and one consonant, double the last consonant

مع صفات القصيرة المنتهية بحرف متحرك واحد ثم حرف ساكن واحد، تصاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير

thin - thinner than      big - bigger than

e.g. The snake is thinner than the crocodile.



### 3- Short adjectives ending in (a consonant + y), change the (y) into (i) and add (-er).

مع صفات القصيرة المنتهية بـ (حرف (y) متحركاً بحرف ساكن) فإننا نحول الـ (y) إلى (i) ونضيف (-er).

noisy - noisier than

e.g. Parrots are noisier than spiders.



## Long adjectives

الصفات الطويلة تتكون من مقطعين أو أكثر.

more / less + long adjective (صفة طويلة) + than

dangerous - more dangerous than

beautiful - more beautiful than

delicious - less delicious than

e.g. A snake is more dangerous than a fox.



e.g. Butter is less delicious than ice cream.



**① Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Horses are ..... than camels  
a) fast      b) faster      c) fastest      d) the fastest
2. Camels are ..... than horses  
a) the tallest      b) taller      c) tallest      d) tall
3. Camels are ..... than horses  
a) heaviest      b) the heaviest      c) heavy      d) heavier
4. Snakes are ..... than spiders  
a) scary      b) the scariest      c) scarier      d) scariest
5. The elephant is ..... than the hippo  
a) the biggest      b) bigger      c) big      d) biggest
6. Cakes are ..... than bread  
a) delicious      b) more delicious  
c) the most delicious      d) most delicious
7. The snake is ..... than the fox  
a) the most dangerous      b) dangerous  
c) more dangerous      d) most dangerous

**② Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. The snake is ..... (most) dangerous than the fox
2. The elephant is ..... (big) than the hippo
3. The giraffe is ..... (tall) than the horse
4. A mouse is smaller ..... (than) an elephant
5. The fennec fox is ..... (small) than the camel
6. Ice cream is ..... (most) delicious than butter
7. Parrots are noisier ..... (than) spiders
8. I think cats are ..... (nice) than dogs
9. Dogs are ..... (thin) than elephants





## Activities

### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Camels are .....  
a) amazing      b) boring      c) bad      d) useless
- Their ..... is delicious.  
a) water      b) milk      c) juice      d) meat
- Camels are perfect for the .....  
a) forest      b) sea      c) grassland      d) desert
- They can live without ..... for a long time.  
a) food      b) juice      c) water      d) milk

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- The elephant is ..... than the mouse.  
a) big      b) the biggest      c) bigger      d) biggest
- The giraffe is ..... than the horse.  
a) tallest      b) taller      c) the tallest      d) tall
- Are camels ..... than horses?  
a) the most beautiful      b) beautiful  
c) more beautiful      d) most beautiful
- The fennec fox is ..... than the camel.  
a) the smallest      b) smaller      c) smallest      d) small
- Parrots are ..... than spiders.  
a) the noisiest      b) noisier      c) noisest      d) noisy

### 3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

forest - perfect - desert - strong - milk

Camels are amazing! They're beautiful, 1) ..... animals. They help us to carry things and people to cross the  
2) ..... Their  
3) ..... is delicious. We can use their fur  
to make clothes! Camels are 4) ..... for the desert.  
Camels have large, flat feet so they don't sink in the sand.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

AL-BAHER - Connect (4) - First Term 53

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Camels are amazing! They're beautiful, strong animals. They help us to carry things and people to cross the desert. Their milk is delicious. We can use their fur to make clothes! Camels are perfect for the desert. Camels can live without water for a long time.

## A) Choose the correct answer.

- The underlined pronoun "They" refers to .....  
a) foxes      b) camels      c) elephants      d) horses
- Camels are ..... for the desert.  
a) heavy      b) perfect      c) dangerous      d) bad

## B) Answer the following questions.

- How do camels help us? .....
- What can we do with camels' fur? .....

## 5 Punctuate the following sentence.

ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

Leopards are more dangerous than giraffes

## 6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Camel - Horse

Guiding words:

faster - heavier - stronger - taller )

# Lesson 3

## THE PELICAN AND THE BEAR



fish

سمكة



surprised

متدهش



angry

غاضب



beak

منقش



bear

دب



pelican

طير



teeth

اسنن



paw



claws

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك ان يعترف على هذه الكلمات



## Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

Where....?	أين ...؟	juicy	كثير العصارة / طري
Why...?	لماذا...؟	river	نهر
ready	جاهز	kind	طيب - عطوف
hungry	جائع	lift	يرفع
boring	ممل	interesting	شيق - مثير
sadly	بحزن	fun	متعة
surprised	مدهش	story	قصة

## Conjugation of verbs

نصرف الأفعال

Present	Past	Present	Past
describe	يصف described	take	يأخذ took
look	يظهر looked	have - has	يملك had
reach	يصل reached	see	يرى saw
lift	يرفع lifted	fly	يطير flew
think	يعتقد thought	feel	يشعر felt

## Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات مهمة و介

look at	ينظر إلى	right to give	محق أن يعطى
Excuse me!	معذرة!	lift its paw	يرفع كفه
take out of	يخرج الشيء من	kind to	عطوف مع
look scared	يبدو خائفًا	ready to	مستعد لكي

## Ask and answer.

سأل وأجب.



Do you like the story?

هل تعجبك القصة؟



No, it is boring.

لا، إنها مملة.

Yes, it is interesting.

نعم، إنها شيقة.



### Lesson (3)

Read and listen.

اقرأ واستمع.

## The Pelican and the Bear

A pelican and a bear are in the river. They are very hungry. They are both looking at a big, juicy fish. The bear reaches for the fish. It lifts its paw. The pelican opens its beak. It is ready to take the fish out of the water.

The bear sees the pelican. The pelican sees the bear. "Excuse me", the pelican says, "that's my fish".

The bear is surprised and angry.

"Pelican, look at my claws. Now look at my teeth. That's my fish."

The pelican looks scared. "I'm sorry, Bear," it says sadly.



بجعة ودب في النهر. إنهما جائعان جدًا. كلاهما ينظر إلى سمكة كبيرة وطرية. يصل لدب إلى السمكة ويرفع كفه. تفتح البجعة منقارها. إنها حاضرة لإخراج السمكة من الماء. يرى الدب لبجعة ترى البجعة لدب. تقول البجعة «معذرة، هذه سمكتي». الدب مندهش وغاضب. «أبتيا البجعة، انظري إلى مخالي. والآن انصري إلى أسناني. هذه سمكتي». تبدو البجعة خائفة وتقول بحزن «أنا آسفة أيها الدب».



The bear is stronger than the pelican. The bear looks at the pelican. "How do you feel, pelican?" he asks.

"I feel hungry," says Pelican.

"I'm bigger and stronger than you," says Bear.

"But I think you are hungrier than me.

You can have the fish." "Thank you, Bear!" says Pelican.

"You are kinder than all the other bears!"

الدب أقوى من البجعة. ينظر لدب إلى البجعة ويسألها «ما شعورك أبتيا سمكة؟» تقول البجعة «أشعر بالجوع». يقول الدب «أنا أكبر وأقوى منك». «لكني أعتقد أنك أكثر جوعاً مني». «يمكنك تناول السمكة» تقول البجعة «شكراً لك أيها الدب!». «أنت ألطف من كل الدببة الأخرى!»

Help your child read the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ القصة.

AI-BAHER - Connect (4) - First Term (57)

## PRONUNCIATION

Listen and repeat.

b /b/



bee

نحلة



bear

دب



beak

منقار



bird

طائر

p /p/



peas

زيتون (بست)



pin

دبوس



pear

كمثرى



pelican

بيعه

Write the words in the correct column. Listen and check.

pelican - pear - bee - bird - peas - bear - pin - beak

b/

p/

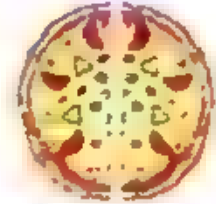


# CLIL : MATH

A fraction is a part of a whole.

الكسرة هي جزء من الواحد الصحيح

denominator المقام  $\frac{1}{2}$  numerator البسط



Descending order: is to arrange from the largest to the smallest

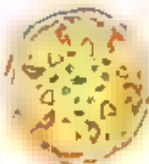
ترتيب التنازلي: هو الترتيب من الأكبر إلى الأصغر

e.g., 10, 9, 8, 7, 6, 5, 4, 3, 2, 1

e.g.,  $\frac{1}{1} > \frac{1}{2} > \frac{1}{3} > \frac{1}{4}$

 Look and put in a descending order.

$\frac{1}{1}$



$\frac{3}{4}$



$\frac{1}{2}$



$\frac{1}{4}$



## Did you know?

We use fractions in everyday life. For example, here's a simple milkshake recipe:  $\frac{1}{2}$  a glass of milk,  $\frac{1}{4}$  a cup of milk,  $\frac{1}{4}$  a cup of vanilla ice cream

هل تعلم أننا نستخدم الكسور في حياتنا اليومية.

فوصفة عمل الحليب المتعددة الشوكولاتة، كوب من الحليب و  $\frac{1}{4}$  كوب من الحليب و  $\frac{1}{4}$  كوب من الآيس كريم الفانيليا

كوب من الآيس كريم الفانيليا



## Activities

### ① Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. A pelican and a bear are in the .....  
a) lake                      b) river                      c) desert                      d) forest
2. They are very .....  
a) hungry                      b) fast                      c) slow                      d) thirsty
3. The bear ..... for the fish  
a) comes                      b) goes                      c) reaches                      d) finds
4. The pelican open its .....  
a) ear                      b) eye                      c) leg                      d) beak

### ② Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The bear has a .....  
a) paw                      b) hand                      c) beak                      d) wing
2. A ..... is a fruit  
a) pear                      b) bear                      c) bee                      d) pelican
3. The bear has .....  
a) wings                      b) feathers                      c) beaks                      d) claws
4. The pelican opens its ..... to catch the fish  
a) beak                      b) ear                      c) paw                      d) legs
5. They're looking at a big fish . They're .....  
a) surprised                      b) sad                      c) hungry                      d) angry

### ③ Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

ear - beak - paw - juicy fish - water

A pelican and a bear are in the river. They are very hungry. They are both looking at a big, 1) ..... The bear lifts its 2) ..... The pelican opens its 3) ..... It's ready to take the fish out of the 4) .....

### Lesson (3)

#### 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة.

A pelican and a bear are in the river. They are very hungry. They are looking at a big juicy fish. The bear reaches for the fish. It lifts its paw. The pelican opens its beak. It is ready to take the fish out of the water. The bear is surprised and angry. The bear is stronger than the pelican.

#### A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The pelican and the bear are in the \_\_\_\_\_ .  
a) park                      b) zoo                      c) take                      d) river
2. They are \_\_\_\_\_ .  
a) hungry                      b) thirsty                      c) tired                      d) happy

#### B) Answer the following questions.

3. Which animal is stronger, the bear or the pelican?
4. What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to?

#### 5 Punctuate the following sentence.

ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

- which animal is angry

#### 6 Put in a descending order.

1.  $\frac{1}{8}$  ,  $\frac{1}{4}$  ,  $\frac{1}{3}$

2.  $\frac{1}{4}$  ,  $\frac{1}{3}$  ,  $\frac{1}{1}$

3.  $\frac{2}{8}$  ,  $\frac{3}{3}$  ,  $\frac{1}{8}$

4.  $\frac{2}{3}$  ,  $\frac{4}{4}$  ,  $\frac{1}{2}$

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - First Term 61

الممسوحة صوتياً بـ CamScanner





## - WRITING - PROJECT

### Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية



horns

قرون



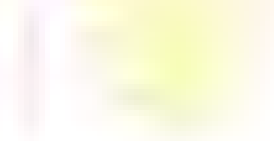
big ears

أذان كبيرة



coat

فرو خشن



yellow/white color

لون أصفر/أبيض

### Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

to gaze at

نظر في

نظرت

ferreted for

بحث عن

فرقة

the Sahara Desert

صحراء ليبيا

لبن

mamas

أمهات

بود

North Africa

شمال إفريقيا

ميك

warm

دافئ

ماء

male

ذكور

طعم / ذكي

female

أنثى

قوة

### Important expressions and prepositions

عبارات مهمة

look for

يبحث عن

يتجول

need to

يحتاج إلى

يحتاج حوالي

protect from

يحمي من

يحمي حرارته

at night

ليلاً

في النهار

## Lessons (4 & 5)

Look and read.

نظروا وقروا.

### Animal fact file



#### Rhim gazelle

Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert, and they walk around looking for grass, leaves and plants to eat. They have big ears and long horns. They have yellow-white coats which protect them from the sun. Like camels, they don't need to drink a lot of water.

نظروا على هذا الملف وقروا. هذا الملف يحتوي على معلومات عن الغزال الريم. الغزال الريم يعيش في الصحراء. له قفازات كبيرة وأرجل طويلة. له قفازات صفراء بيضاء تحميه من الشمس. مثل الجمال، لا يحتاج شرب الكثير من الماء.

How long is a rhim gazelle's horn?	20 - 30 cm
How heavy is a rhim gazelle?	20 - 30 kg
How long does it live?	about 14 years
What color is its coat?	yellow-white

#### Answer the following questions.

Where do rhim gazelles live?

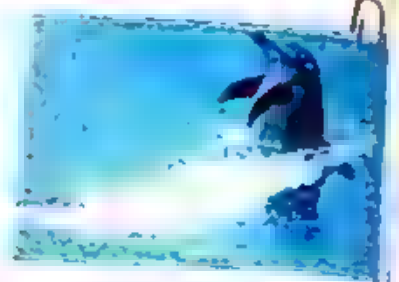
What do they eat?

How heavy is a rhim gazelle?

Read, then complete the fact file.

اقرأ ثم أكمل ملف الحقائق

## Dolphins



Dolphins are clever, friendly mammals. There are about 40 kinds of dolphins. They live in hot, warm and cold waters. They are 1.7 - 9.5 m long. They are 50 kg - 10 tons. The males are bigger than the females. They can travel at 29 kph.

How many kinds of dolphins are there?

How long are they?

How heavy are they?

Where do they live?

**Look and read.**

انظر واقرأ.

## The fennec fox

The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North Africa. It is smaller than other foxes. It is 20 centimeters high. It weighs around 1 kilogram. It is 30 - 40 centimeters long. Its ears are big, really big! The fennec fox needs big ears to hear insects and small animals. The fennec fox eats insects, lizards, and small mice. During the day, it is hot in the desert. The fennec fox loses heat from its ears. At night it is cold. The fennec fox's thick fur keeps it warm.







# Activities

## ① Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- The fennec fox lives in the deserts of ..... Africa.  
a) North      b) South      c) East      d) West
- It's ..... than other foxes.  
a) bigger      b) smaller      c) taller      d) shorter
- The fennec fox needs big ..... to hear insects.  
a) ears      b) eyes      c) legs      d) lands
- It eats insects, lizards and small .....  
a) plants      b) fish      c) birds      d) mice

## ② Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

drinks - eats - heat - ears - hot

The fennec fox needs big 1) ..... to hear insects and small animals. The fennec fox 2) ..... insects, lizards, and small mice. During the day, it is 3) ..... in the desert. The fennec fox loses 4) ..... from its ears. At night it is cold. The fennec fox's thick fur keeps it warm.

## ③ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- During the day, it is ..... in the desert.  
a) cold      b) rainy      c) hot      d) cool
- How ..... is the rhim gazelle? - It's about 20-30 kg.  
a) often      b) heavy      c) long      d) old
- Rhim gazelles have yellow-white .....  
a) coats      b) horns      c) ears      d) beak
- The fennec fox's thick ..... keeps it warm.  
a) leg      b) fur      c) ear      d) tail

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - First Term 65

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

**Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert, and they walk around looking for grass, leaves and plants to eat. They have big ears and long horns. They have yellow-white coats which protect them from the sun. Like camels, they don't need to drink a lot of water. They live about 14 years.**

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The text is about .....  
 a) Rhim gazelles      b) Mice      c) Dolphins      d) fennec fox
2. Rhim gazelles have big .....  
 a) legs      b) teeth      c) ears      d) hands

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What color is the rhim gazelle's coat? .....
4. Do they need to drink a lot of water? .....

5 Punctuate the following sentence.

ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

- rhim gazelles look very beautiful

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

The fennec fox

Guiding words:

( live - North Africa - smaller - high - weigh )

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



# Review on Unit (2)

## Animals



camel eagle pelican spider beak



crocodile snake fennec fox fur



rhinoceros horns

## Adjectives



big fast heavy beautiful



short tall thin nice



small noisy

## Desert animals

b

/b/



bee beak bird bear

p

/p/



peacock pelican pin pear

short + adj. + er + than

A camel is taller than a fennec fox.

An eagle is heavier than a mouse.

more / less + long adj. + than

Crocodiles are more dangerous than horses.



## Writing Corner



Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

### *The camel*

Camels are strong animals. They help us to carry things and people to cross the desert. Camel's milk is delicious. Camels have large, flat feet. They can live without water for a long time. They are perfect for the desert.

### *Rhim gazelles*

Rhim gazelles live in the Sahara Desert. They walk around looking for grass, leaves and plants to eat. They have big ears and long horns. They have yellow-white coats which protect them from the sun. Like camels, they don't need to drink a lot of water.

### *The fennec fox*

The fennec fox lives in the desert. It has big ears. It is about 20 centimeters high. It is about one kilogram. It eats insects, lizards and small animals. It loses heat from its ears. At night it is cold. The fox's thick fur keeps it warm.



# Dictation on Unit (2)

## Lesson (1)

لعلمك

لعلمك

جعل

مخيف

طبخم

طهور

نمساخ

عنكبوت

حشرات

سحالي

## Lesson (2)

جميل

لذيذ

رمل

حصان

ثقليل

كثير

سنام

مدهش

مناسب / مثالي

مزيج

طويل

سريع

## Lesson (3)

لحلة

بجعة

كعري

طائر

ديوس

بارزاه (بسلة)

مدهش

مفقار

دب

يصف

جائع

كف

سمكة

أسنان

مخلب

غاضب

## Lesson (4)

فئران

يبحث عن

لون أبيض مائل للصفرة

قرون

قرو

آذان كبيرة

Help your child dictate these words.

ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - First Term (89)

الممسوحة صوتياً بـ CamScanner

# Activities on Unit (2)

① Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

سمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Rhinoceroses look very .....  
 a. scary      b. beautiful      c. sad      d. ugly
2. They live in the Sahara .....  
 a. Cave      b. Mountain      c. Hill      d. Desert
3. They eat ..... leaves and plants.  
 a. fish      b. insects      c. grass      d. birds
4. They have big ears and long .....  
 a. horns      b. tails      c. hair      d. legs

② Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Horses eat ..... and drink fresh water.  
 a. fish      b. grass      c. birds      d. animals
2. The pelican eats small .....  
 a. elephant      b. fish      c. crocodiles      d. camels
3. Crocodiles are huge and .....  
 a. nice      b. scary      c. beautiful      d. friendly
4. A pelican opens its ..... to eat the fish.  
 a. claw      b. beak      c. paw      d. leg

③ Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

grass - Scorpions - dangerous - scary - insects

in our country, there are many animals. There are  
 crocodiles. They are huge and .....  
 ..... are very helpful. They .....  
 ..... Snakes are .....  
 .....

## Activities

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Dolphins are extremely clever animals. They are cute, not dangerous. There are around 40 kinds of dolphins. They never chew their food. They live in water. They are mammals, not fish. They can swim very fast. They use their tails to move faster. They can live for 10-45 years. They eat fish, shrimps, jellyfish and octopuses.

### A) Choose the correct answer.

- Dolphins are ..... animals.  
a) dangerous    b) scary    c) clever    d) ugly
- Dolphins are .....  
a) plants    b) birds    c) mammals    d) insects

### B) Answer the following questions.

- Summarize the text in one sentence. ....
- What do dolphins eat? ...

### 5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

- The bear is ..... (strong) than the pelican.
- The lion is ..... (most) dangerous than the giraffe.
- Ali is taller ..... (that) Ahmed.
- Horses are ..... (fast) than camels.

### 6 Punctuate the following sentence.

ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

- does Tarek like crocodiles

### 7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

The rhim gazelle

Guiding questions:

- Where does it live?    -What does it eat?    -What color is its coat?

# Al-Azhar Corner

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

أكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع.

What - farmers - insects - scary

- Tarek : Look at that spider.  
 Sara : Wow! It's 1) .....  
 Tarek : Yeah, but spiders are very helpful.  
 Sara : 2) ..... do they  
 Tarek : They eat small 3) .....  
 Sara : Do 4) ..... like spiders?  
 Tarek : Yes, they do.

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

واكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع.

control - scary - Crocodiles - helpful

- Tarek : Do you like animals?  
 Sara : Of course. They are 1) .....  
 Tarek : Which animals are 2) .....  
 Sara : 3) ..... are scary.  
 Tarek : Are crocodiles helpful?  
 Sara : Yes, they 4) ..... the number of small animals.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أرتب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

- are - than - Camels - horses - taller - .
- is - fox - How - heavy - the fennec - ?
- more - than - Long - giraffes - dangerous - are - .
- than - heavier - The cat - the mouse - is - .
- than - is - The person - smaller - the bear - .



# Unit 3

## Why do we grow plants?

لماذا نزرع النباتات؟



### In this unit the student will ...

في هذه الوحدة الطالب سوف

- listen, read, research and write about plants and their life cycle

يسمع - يقرأ - يبحث - يكتب عن النباتات ودورة حياتها

- practice making sentences with the comparatives

يتدرب على تكوين جمل باستخدام المقارنات

- read, listen to, and understand a short story

يقرأ - يسمع - يفهم قصة قصيرة

- learn about and say words with the consonant blends / / and / /

يتعلم عن الكلمات التي تبدأ بـ / / و / / ويقولها

- write the life cycle of a sunflower

يكتب دورة حياة زهرة الشمس

- research and write a report

يبحث - يكتب تقريراً

# Lesson (1)

# PLANTS AND SEEDS

## The germination process

عملية الإنبات



soil

تربة زراعية



seeds

بذور



shoot

برعم / نبتة



roots

جذور



leaf

ورقة شجر



leaves

أوراق الشجر



flower

زهرة

### Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

plants

نباتات

inside

داخل

is called

يُسمى

awesome

رائع / مدهش

balcony

بلكونة / شرفة

process

عملية

new

جديد

before

قبل

under

تحت

tomato fruits

ثمار الطماطم

new plants?

Help your child identify these words.

الممسوحة صوتيا بـ CamScanner

## Lesson (1)

### Conjugation of verbs

لصريف الأفعال

#### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past
look ينظر	looked
water يسقى	watered
die يموت	died
plant يزرع	planted

#### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past
grow ينمو	grew
find يجد	found
become يصبح	became
take يأخذ	took

### Important expressions and prepositions

بجملات وألفاظ مهمة

above the soil	فوق التربة	is called	يُسمى / يُدعى
under the soil	تحت التربة	on the balcony	في الشكوة
Let's have it for lunch!		That's awesome!	هذا مذهل!

هيا تناولوها على الغذاء!

هذا مذهل!

### Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

#### "The Germination Process"

We put a seed in soil. The seed needs sunlight and water so it can grow. The seed grows roots under the soil. Then it grows a shoot and gets taller above the soil. Finally, the full plant grows leaves and flowers.

نمو النبات.

نحن نضع البذرة في التربة. البذرة تحتاج ضوء الشمس والماء حتى تستطيع أن تنمو. البذرة تنمو جذور تحت التربة. ثم تنمو الساق وتصبح أطول فوق التربة. في النهاية الساق الكامل ينمو كأوراق وأزهار.

### Did you know ....?



that we eat this cacao seed?

هل كنت تعلم أننا نتناول بذرة الكاكاو هذه؟

Chocolate comes from this plant.

الشيكولاتة تُنتج من هذا النبات.



leaf



leaves

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - First Term 75

## Listen, read and role-play.



Dad : Come and look!

نعال وانظر!

Seleem : What is it, Dad?

ما هذا يا أبي؟

Dad : Our tomato plants are growing on the balcony!  
Look, can you see the leaves and the flowers?

تنمو نباتات الطماطم الخاصة بنا في شرفة (البلكونة) انظر. هل تستطيع ان ترى الأوراق والأزهار؟

Seleem : Oh yes, but why are the tomatoes green?

أوه. نعم، لكن لماذا حبات الطماطم خضراء؟

Dad : Tomatoes are green before they are red.

تكون الطماطم خضراء قبل أن تصبح حمراء

Seleem : How do we grow new tomatoes?

كيف نزرع طماطم جديدة؟

Dad : Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes! We plant a seed and the plant grows. That is called germination. We water the plant every day and the roots grow under the soil. The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits.

تحتوي الطماطم على بذور بداخلها. يمكن أن نأخذ البذور ونزرع طماطم جديدة. نحن نزرع البذرة ولسان سموا. تلك العملية تسمى بعملية الإنبات. نحن نسقي النبات كل يوم وتنمو الجذور تحت التربة. النبات ينبت زهور والزهور تصبح ثمار طماطم.

Seleem : That's awesome! And I found a red tomato! Let's have it for lunch!

هذا رائع وأنا وجدت ثمرة طماطم حمراء! هيا نتناولها على الغداء!



Why do you think a plant dies?

في رأيك لماذا يموت النبات؟





# Activities

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d

السمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

- Tomatoes are \_\_\_\_\_ and important.  
a) delicious    b) bad    c) red    d) green
- We use tomatoes in most of our \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) drinks    b) food    c) sports    d) study
- Everyone can grow tomatoes on their \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) bedroom    b) bathroom    c) balcony    d) kitchen
- Tomatoes have \_\_\_\_\_ inside.  
a) seeds    b) leaves    c) roots    d) shoots

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

- Our tomato plants are \_\_\_\_\_ on the balcony!  
a) playing    b) growing    c) reading    d) watering
- Tomatoes are \_\_\_\_\_ before they are red.  
a) gray    b) yellow    c) green    d) black
- Tomatoes have \_\_\_\_\_ inside.  
a) reeds    b) leaves    c) shoots    d) seeds
- The \_\_\_\_\_ grow under the soil.  
a) flowers    b) shoots    c) roots    d) leaves
- When we plant a seed and the plant grows, that is called \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) germination    b) destination  
c) determination    d) information

## 3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بالكلمات من الصندوق

green - flowers - shoot - seed - sunlight

We put a seed in soil. The seed needs 1) \_\_\_\_\_ and water so it can grow. The 2) \_\_\_\_\_ grows roots under the soil. Then it grows a 3) \_\_\_\_\_ and gets taller above the soil. Finally, the full plant grows leaves and 4) \_\_\_\_\_.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - First Term (77)

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

اقرأ النص و اجب عن الاسئلة

**Tomatoes have seeds inside.** We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes! We plant a seed and the plant grows. That is called germination. We water the plant every day and the roots grow under the soil. The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits. Tomatoes are green before they are red.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. The main idea of the text

a) tomatoes germination

b) cutting tomatoes

c) eating tomatoes

d) selling tomatoes

2. Tomatoes are \_\_\_\_\_ before they are red

a) yellow

b) green

c) black

d) white

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. Where do roots grow?

4. What do tomatoes have inside?

**5 Punctuate the following sentence.**

ضع علامات ترقيم مناسبة للجملة

- how do we grow new tomatoes

**6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:**

كتب فقرة إرشادية من (18) كلمة عن

Plants and seeds

Guiding words:

( tomatoes - grow - roots )

## Lesson (2)

## PLANTS IN EGYPT

### Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

### Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد



lotus flower  
زهرة اللوتس



bean plant  
نبات الفول



orange tree  
شجرة البرتقال



sunflower  
زهرة عباد الشمس



rose  
وردة



reed  
نبات البوص



daisy  
زهرة اللؤلؤ «الأقحوان»



acacia  
شجرة السنط



tamarisk  
شجرة الطراف

### Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

heavy	ثقيل	lake	بحيرة
about / around	حوالي	rain	مطر
butterfly	فراشة	near	قريب
suitcase	حقبة سفر	need	بحاجة
beetle	خنفساء	habitat	موطن / بيئة
agricultural	زراعي	river	نهر
colorful	ملون	work	يعمل
maize	ذرة	eggplant	الباذنجان

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - First Term 79

## Look and read.

A habitat is a place where living things live and grow.

المكان الذي تعيش وتنمو فيه الكائنات الحية.

### Desert habitat

البيئة الصحراوية

There is not much rain here. Plants that live in the desert do not need a lot of water.

لا يوجد الكثير من الأمطار هنا، النباتات التي تعيش في الصحراء لا تحتاج إلى ماء كثير.

### Rivers and lakes

الأنهار والبحيرات

Plants near rivers and lakes need a lot of water.

النباتات الموجودة بالقرب من الأنهار والبحيرات تحتاج إلى ماء كثير.







### Agricultural habitat

البيئة الزراعية

Farmers work here. They grow food for us to eat.



يعمل المزارعون هنا. فهم يقومون بزراعة الطعام من أجلنا لتأكله.

### Read and learn.

Rivers and lakes	Agricultural habitat	Desert habitat
lotus flower 	orange tree 	acacia 
reed 	bean plant 	tamarisk 

### Look and read the fact file.

أولاً ملف الحقائق.

	daisy 	rose 	
How big is the flower?	2.5 - 5 cm	about 6 cm	7.5 - 15 cm
How tall is it?	10 cm	60 cm	1 - 3.5 m
How long does it live?	around 6 days	around 10 days	around 2 weeks
How heavy is it?	around 20 g	around 50 g	around 200 g



## Language Focus

### Superlative Adjectives صفات التفضيل

#### Usage:

- We use superlative adjectives to compare someone or something with a group.

نستخدم صفات التفضيل لمقارنة شخص أو شيء مع مجموعة أخرى.

#### Form:

#### 1 Short adjectives

الصفات القصيرة

the + adj. الصفة + est

tall → the tallest

e.g. The reed is the tallest.



#### Spelling rules:

- 1 Short adjectives ending in (-e), only add (-st).

الصفات القصيرة التي تنتهي بحرف (e) ، نضيف لها (-st) فقط .

nice → the nicest

e.g. My city is the nicest place to live.

- 2 Short adjectives ending in one vowel and one consonant, double the last consonant, then add (est).

الصفات القصيرة التي تنتهي بحرف متحرك واحد ثم حرف ساكن واحد، نضعف الحرف الساكن الأخير ثم نضيف (est) .

big → the biggest      thin → the thinnest

e.g. My cat is the biggest in our street.

- 3 Short adjectives ending in (a consonant + y), change the (y) into (i) then add (est).

الصفات القصيرة التي تنتهي بحرف y مسبقاً بحرف ساكن، نحول حرف (y) إلى (i) ثم نضيف (est).

easy → the easiest      heavy → the heaviest

e.g. I have the heaviest suitcase.

## 2 Long adjectives الصفات الطويلة

the most الأكثر ' the least الأقل + adj. الصفة

beautiful → the most beautiful

e.g. I think the rose is the most beautiful flower.

I think the sunflower is the least beautiful flower.



## ① Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

- The giraffe is the ..... land animal  
a) the tallest      b) taller      c) tallest      d) tall
- The cheetah is ..... land animal  
a) the fastest      b) fast      c) fastest      d) faster
- The elephant is ..... land animal  
a) the heaviest      b) heavy      c) heavier      d) heaviest
- The rose is the ..... flower  
a) more beautiful      b) beautiful  
c) the most beautiful      d) most beautiful
- My city is the ..... place to live  
a) the nicest      b) nice      c) nicest      d) nicer

## ② Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس

- The elephant is the ..... (big) animal
- The bean is the ..... (small) plant
- The snake is the ..... (scary) animal
- The rose is the ..... (more) beautiful flower
- My cat is the ..... (nice) in our street
- The lion is the ..... (more) dangerous animal



# Activities

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وصيغ في ورد حيوان راجع كتابك

- There are many habitats in  
a) Egypt      b) France      c) China      d) USA
- In \_\_\_\_\_ habitats, farmers work and grow food.  
a) agricultural      b) desert      c) rivers      d) lakes
- In the desert habitat, there is no much  
a) wind      b) animals      c) sand      d) rain
- Plants that live in the desert don't need a lot of  
a) water      b) sun      c) soil      d) wind

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

- The desert is the \_\_\_\_\_ habitat.  
a) hot      b) the hottest      c) hotter      d) hottest
- The rose is bigger than the daisy, but the sunflower is the \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) the biggest      b) big      c) bigger      d) biggest
- Ahmed is the \_\_\_\_\_ in his class..  
a) tall      b) the tallest      c) tallest      d) taller
- The daisy is the \_\_\_\_\_ flower.  
a) more colorful      b) most colorful  
c) colorful      d) less colorful
- This is the \_\_\_\_\_ lesson.  
a) important      b) more important  
c) most important      d) less important
- The reed is the \_\_\_\_\_ plant.  
a) tall      b) the tallest      c) taller      d) tallest
- This is the \_\_\_\_\_ flower in the garden.  
a) less beautiful      b) beautiful  
c) most beautiful      d) more beautiful
- Amira is the \_\_\_\_\_ girl in our class.  
a) more nice      b) nice      c) nicer      d) nicest

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

(Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - First Term (83)



### 3 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

The agricultural habitat is very beautiful. Farmers grow vegetables and fruit. They grow bean plants and orange trees. The desert habitat is too hot. There is not much rain. Plants that grow in the desert do not need a lot of water. Acacia and tamarisk trees can grow in the desert. Lotus flowers and reeds grow near rivers and lakes as they need a lot of water.

#### A) Choose the correct answer.

- Acacia trees grow in the .....  
a) desert      b) forest      c) rivers      d) lakes
- There isn't much ..... in the desert  
a) heat      b) rain      c) sand      d) ice

#### B) Answer the following questions.

- Where do reeds grow?....
- Do desert plants need a lot of water?

### 4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكر الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

- Elephants are the ..... (big) land animals
- Crocodiles are the ..... (more) dangerous
- Ali is the ..... (tall) boy in the class
- The sunflower is ..... (that) tallest flower
- Aya is the ..... (more) beautiful girl
- Hani is the ..... (fast) boy
- This bag is the ..... (heavy)
- The rose is the ..... (nice) flower here



## Lesson (2)

### 5 Punctuate the following.

صع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي

what's the most beautiful flower

ric

### 6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة ثمانية عشر (18) كلمة عن:

Flowers

Guiding words:

( flowers - tallest - most beautiful - most colorful )

### 7 Complete the table.

أكمل الجدول

	taller than	the tallest
big		
heavy		the heaviest
		the most beautiful

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - First Term (85)

الممسوحة صوتياً بـ CamScanner

## Lesson (3)

## LUCAS AND HIS FARM

### Key vocabulary

a million  
farm

a billion  
land

dry  
noise

### Extra vocabulary

grandparents

the United States

rainwater

difficult

hard

important

special

life

liter

### Conjugation of verbs

فعل مضارع

أفعال غير منتظمة verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
pollute	polluted	bring	brought
work	worked	grow	grew
decide	decided	buy	bought
need	needed	am - is	was
plant	planted	make	made

### Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

on the farm	في المزرعة	work very hard	يعمل بجد
have a good life	حياة جيدة	proud of	لغور
want to	يريد أن	at first	في بداية الأمر
decide to	يقرر أن	buy some land	يشترى بعض الأرض

### Lesson (3)

Look, listen and read.

انظر واستمع واقرأ.

## Lucas and his farm

Lucas lives on a farm in the United States. It is a very special farm. Forty years ago, the land was very dry. There were no farms.

No one wanted to live there.

Lucas's grandparents lived in the city, but they didn't like it. They didn't like the polluted air and the noise. They wanted to have a farm. They decided to buy some land.



عاش لوكاس في مزرعته في الولايات المتحدة. إنها مزرعة مميزة جدًا. منذ أربعين عامًا، كانت الأرض جافة جدًا،  
لم يكن هناك مزارع. لم يكن أحد يريد العيش هناك. كان أجداد لوكاس يعيشان في المدينة لكنهما لم يعجبهما  
البيئة الملوثة والهواء المسموم والصوت. أرادوا أن يمتلكوا مزرعة وقرر شراء بعض الأراضي.

At first, life was very difficult. They worked very hard and they planted millions of seeds. They used rainwater to water the seeds. They needed about a billion liters of water a year. They grew many fruits like oranges and lemons. They brought animals to the land. They planted trees and flowers.

في البداية كانت الحياة صعبة جدًا. لقد عملوا بجد وزرعوا ملايين البذور واستخدموا مياه الأمطار يسقوا البذور  
كما كانوا بحاجة إلى حوالي مليار لتر من الماء في السنة. لقد زرعوا الكثير من الفاكهة مثل البرتقال والليمون وحبوا  
الحيوانات إلى الأرض وزرعوا الأشجار والزهور.

Today, Lucas lives on the farm with his mom and dad. They are very happy and they have a good life. They are very proud of Lucas's grandparents. They used plants to make the land green.

واليوم يعيش لوكاس في المزرعة مع والدته والديه وهم سعداء جدًا ويعيشون حياة جيدة وهم فخورون جدًا  
بأجداد لوكاس. وقاموا باستخدام النباتات لجعل الأرض خضراء.

# CLIL : MATH

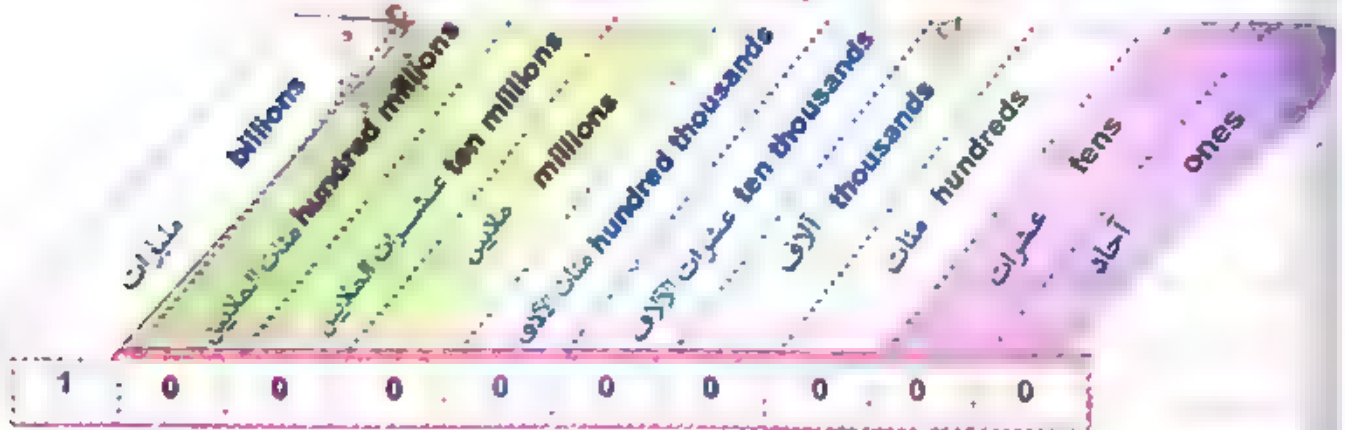
## Large numbers up to billions

الأرقام الكبيرة حتى المليارات

Egypt wants to plant more than 100 million palm trees across the country. This means we need to plant billions of seeds.

مصر تريد زراعة أكثر من 100 مليون من أشجار النخيل في جميع أنحاء البلاد. هذا يعني أننا بحاجة إلى زرع مليارات البذور.

1,000,000,000



**Note:** A billion is a thousand million: 1,000,000,000.

المليار = ألف مليون (1,000,000,000)

**Read and match.**

اقرأ وصل.

- |                  |                       |
|------------------|-----------------------|
| 1) 1,000,000,000 | a) a thousand         |
| 2) 100,000,000   | b) ten thousand       |
| 3) 1,000         | c) a billion          |
| 4) 100,000       | d) a hundred million  |
| 5) 10,000        | e) a hundred thousand |



## Lesson (3)

# PRONUNCIATION

Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد

**/sw/**

swim      sweep      swan      sweets      switch

يسبح      يكتس      بومة      حلوى      مفتاح كهربائي

**/sl/**

slice      slippers      sleep

شريرة      نعال (شبهب)      ينام

## The suffix (-ful)

اللاحقة



The suffix (-ful) means "full of". It's used at the end of many adjectives.   
 اللاحقة "-ful" تعني (كثير من) ونستخدم في نهاه كثير من الصفات.

Word الكلمة

Adjective الصفة

beauty	الجمال	→	beautiful	جميل
care	عناية / اهتمام	→	careful	حريص
color	لون	→	colorful	ملون - زاهي
help	يساعد	→	helpful	متعاون
use	يستخدم	→	useful	مفيد

Help your child identify the consonant blends /sw/ and /sl/ and the suffix (-ful).

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الأصوات المتصلة /sw/ و /sl/ واللاحقة (-ful).

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - First Term (88)



# Activities

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

سمع وضع، دائره حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Lucas lives on a .....  
a) lake                      b) farm                      c) city                      d) town
2. Forty years ago, the ..... was very .....  
a) sky                      b) land                      c) desert                      d) farm
3. Lucas's ..... lived in the city.  
a) grandparents                      b) parents                      c) uncle                      d) aunt
4. They wanted to have a .....  
a) car                      b) house                      c) school                      d) farm

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Lucas lives ..... a farm in the United States.  
a) at                      b) on                      c) in                      d) to
2. Why is it important to turn desert land into .....  
a) wasteland                      b) island                      c) wetland                      d) farm land
3. They grew many ..... like oranges and lemons.  
a) vegetables                      b) drinks                      c) fruits                      d) foods
4. I don't like the story. It's .....  
a) interesting                      b) funny                      c) boring                      d) exciting
5. A ..... is a thousand million.  
a) million                      b) billion                      c) thousand                      d) hundred

## 3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ اكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

car - millions - flowers - land - farm

- I'm Ali. My grandparents lived in the city, but they didn't like it. They wanted to have a 1) ..... They decided to buy some 2) ..... They planted ..... of seeds. They planted trees and 4) .....

### 90 Unit (3) Why do we grow plants?

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

الممسوحة صوتياً بـ CamScanner

### Lesson (3)

#### 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Khaled lives on a farm in Egypt. It's a very beautiful farm. Khaled's grandparents wanted to have a farm. They decided to buy some land. They worked very hard. They planted millions of seeds. They used rainwater to water the seeds. They planted trees and flowers. They grew fruits and brought animals. They were very happy.

#### A) Choose the correct answer.

- Khaled's grandparents brought  
a) plants      b) animals      c) cars      d) birds
- Khaled's grandparents worked very  
a) hard      b) bad      c) right      d) easy

#### B) Answer the following questions.

- Where does Khaled live?
- What did Khaled's grandparents use to water the seeds?

#### 5 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي

- lucas lives in the United States

#### 6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقره بثمانية عشر (18) كلمة عن:

Grandparents' farm

Guiding words:

( farm - fruit - trees - animals - seeds )

.....

.....

.....

.....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

(AI-BAHER - Connect (4) - First Term 01

# Lessons (4 & 5)

# WRITING PROJECT

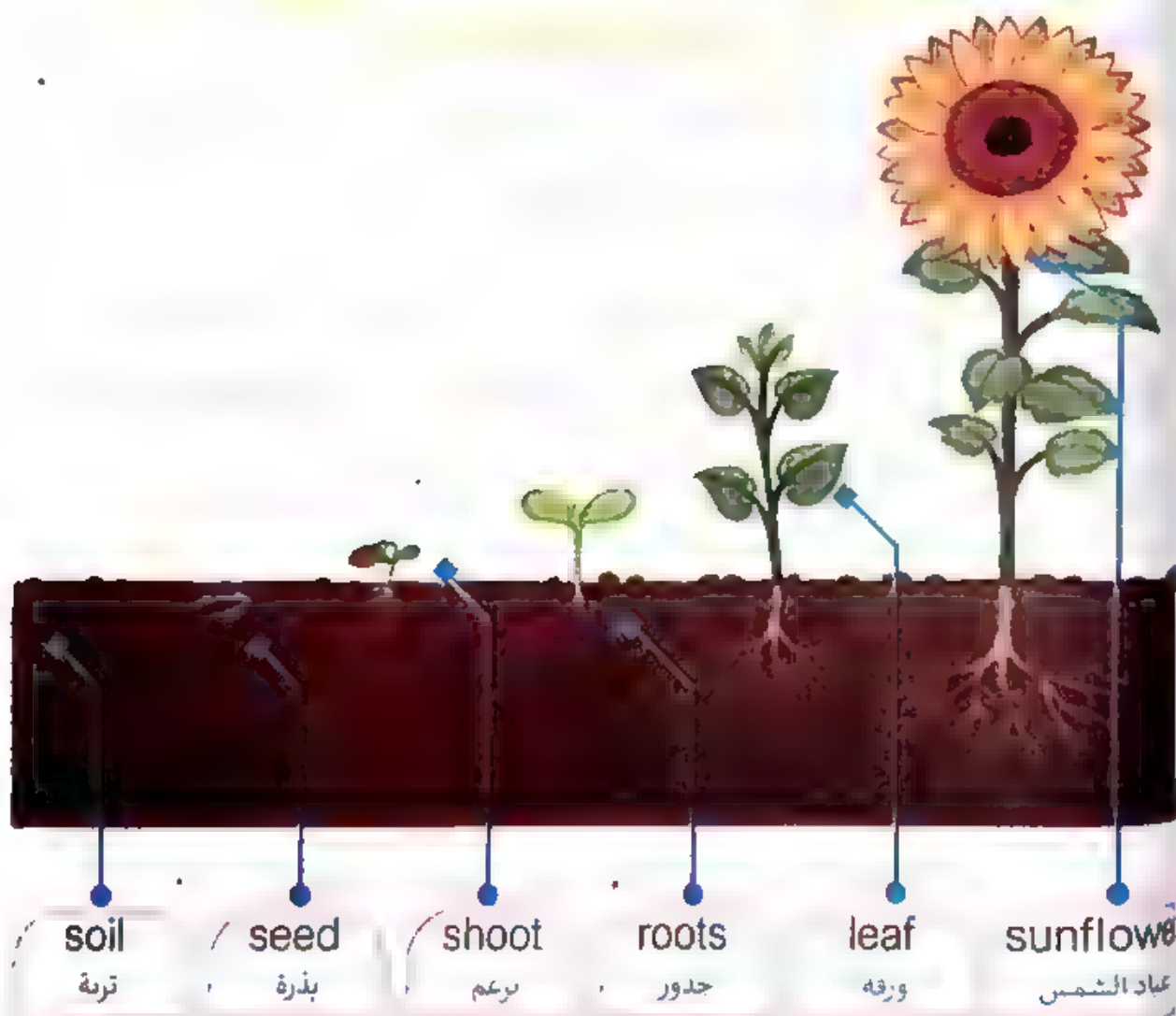
## Vocabulary

Listen, point and say.

مع وأشر وقل.

## The life cycle of a sunflower

دورة حياة نبات عباد الشمس





## Lessons (4 & 5)

### Key vocabulary

Ancient Egyptians	العصريون القدماء	first	ولا	after	بعد
papyrus	ساق البردي	next	ثم	finally	أخيراً
germinate	ينبت	after that	بعد ذلك		

### Extra vocabulary

Nile Delta	دلتا النيل	baskets	سلال	again	مرة أخرى
paper	ورق	sandals	صنادل	drop	يسقط
sunlight	ضوء الشمس	famous	مشهور	process	عملية

### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs

Present	Past
drop	يسقط / dropped
start	يبدأ / started

#### Irregular verbs

Present	Past
put	يضع / put
begin	يبدأ / began

### Important expressions and prepositions

under the soil	تحت التربة	face the sun	واجه الشمس
get taller	يرداد طوله	grow quickly	تنمو بسرعة
near the river	قريب من النهر	warm weather	طقس دافئ



### Writing tip!

When we talk about the life cycle of a plant, we use some sequence words.

عندما نتحدث عن دورة حياة نبات، نستخدم بعض الكلمات الدالة على تسلسل الأحداث.

First

أولاً

Next

ثم

After that

بعد ذلك

After

بعد

Finally

أخيراً

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يميز على هذه الكلمات.

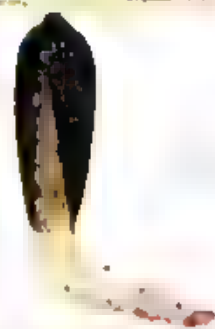
Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - First Term (93)

## Look and read.

*The life cycle of a sunflower*

1 First, you plant the sunflower seed in soil. Water the seed.

أولاً تزرع بذرة عباد الشمس في التربة. واسق البذرة.



2 Next, the seed germinates and it starts to grow roots under the soil.

تُتنمى البذرة وتبدأ جذورها في النمو أسفل التربة.



3 After that, the shoot grows above the soil. It grows leaves. It gets taller.

بعد ذلك، تنمو النبتة فوق التربة وتثبت أوراقها وتزداد طولاً.



4 After about 4 months, the sunflower opens and faces the sun.

بعد حوالي 4 شهور، تتفتح زهرة عباد الشمس وتواجه الشمس.



5 Finally the sunflower dies and drops its seeds. The process begins again.

في النهاية تموت زهرة عباد الشمس وتُسقط بذورها لتبدأ دورة الحياة من جديد.

## Lessons (4 & 5)

# The life cycle of a tomato

Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.



1 First, you plant the tomato seed in soil. You water it.

أولاً ، تزرع البذرة في التربة وترويها.

2 Next, the seed germinates, and it starts to grow roots under the soil.

ثم ، تنبت البذرة وتبدأ في النمو تحت التربة.

3 After that, the shoot grows above the soil. It grows taller.

بعد ذلك ، تنمو الساق فوق التربة وتكون أطول.

4 After a few weeks, the plant grows leaves, flowers, and tomatoes.

بعد بضعة أسابيع ، تنمو الأوراق والزهور والطماطم.

5 Finally, the tomato plant dies and drops its seeds. The process begins again.

في النهاية ، يموت نبات الطماطم ويسقط بذوره. وتبدأ العملية مرة أخرى.

Help your child identify the life cycle of a tomato.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على دورة حياة نبات الطماطم.

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - First Term (95)

## Look and read.

## A REPORT ABOUT A PLANT

## Papyrus

Papyrus is a very special plant. It is famous because Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper. They also made sandals and baskets from papyrus.



نبات البردي هو نبات مميز جداً . وهو مشهور لأن المصريين القدماء استخدموا نبات البردي لصنع الورق و صنعوا أيضا الصنادل والسلال من نبات البردي.



Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm weather to grow quickly. It grows in the Nile Delta near the river.

يحتاج نبات البردي الكثير من الماء والجو الدافئ لينمو بسرعة. وينمو في دلتا النيل بالقرب من النهر.

**Find a plant, search and write its life cycle. Then draw.**

- 1) First, you .....
- 2) Next, .....
- 3) After that .....
- 4) After, .....
- 5) Finally, .....







# Activities

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

سمع وصيغ ذمرا حول (أخبره تصحيحه)

- Papyrus is a very special  
a) animal      b) bird      c) plant      d) fish
- Papyrus is      because Ancient Egyptians used it to make paper.  
a) famous      b) good      c) bad      d) strong
- They also made sandals and      from papyrus.  
a) pots      b) pans      c) baskets      d) spoons
- Papyrus needs a lot of  
a) water      b) milk      c) juice      d) ice

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

- The sunflower opens and faces the  
a) sun      b) Earth      c) moon      d) star
- The sunflower grows      . They are green.  
a) leaves      b) seeds      c) shoots      d) roots
- Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make  
a) homes      b) food      c) paper      d) wood
- Ancient Egyptians made baskets from  
a) cotton      b) trees      c) papyrus      d) iron
- Papyrus needs      weather.  
a) cold      b) ice      c) cool      d) warm

## 3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل نصكم بكلمات من المربع.

trees - After that - Next - leaves - sunlight

First, you plant the sunflower seed in soil. You put it in 1) \_\_\_\_\_ and water it. 2) \_\_\_\_\_, the seed germinates and starts to grow roots under the soil. 3) \_\_\_\_\_, the shoot grows above the soil. It grows 4) \_\_\_\_\_. It gets taller.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

(Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - First Term 97

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

To plant a sunflower, first, you plant the sunflower seed in soil. Then you water it. Next, the seed germinates and it starts grow roots under the soil. After that, the shoot grows above the soil. After about 4 months, it opens and faces the sun.

## A) Choose the correct answer.

1. \_\_\_\_\_, you plant the sunflower seed in the soil.  
a) First      b) After      c) After that      d) Finally
2. You \_\_\_\_\_ the seed.  
a) eat      b) water      c) drink      d) cut

## B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where do the roots grow? \_\_\_\_\_
4. When does it open and face the sun? \_\_\_\_\_

## 5 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي

- papyrus is a very special plant

## 6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

بفقرة ثمانية عشر (18) كلمة عن:

The lifecycle of a tomato

Guiding words:

( seed - sunlight - roots - shoot )



# Review on Unit (3)

## Plants



## Large numbers

1,000 a thousand	100,000 a hundred thousand	1,000,000 a million
10,000,000 ten million	100,000,000 a hundred million	
	1,000,000,000 a billion	

## Why do we grow plants?

/s/



/sw/



Suffix {-ful}

beauti ful color ful, use ful, care ful help ful

the + short adj. + est

The sunflower is the biggest flower.

A coconut is the heaviest seed.

the most / least + long adj.

What is the most beautiful flower?

Help your child revise unit (3).

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الثالثة.

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - First Term. 99



## Writing Corner



Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

### *Egyptian plants*

Egypt has many kinds of plants. Some plants grow in the desert such as the acacia tree and the tamarisk tree. Other plants grow near rivers and lakes such as the lotus flower and the reeds. Farmers grow other plants on farms such as bean plants and orange trees.

مقاله

### *Germination process*

To grow any plant, we follow some steps. First, we put the seeds in soil. Next, we water the seed. The seed germinates. Then, the roots grow under the soil and the shoot grows above the soil. We water the plant. After that, the plant has a flower. Finally, the flowers become fruits.

### *Papyrus*

Papyrus is an important plant. It's a very special plant. The Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper. They used papyrus to make sandals and baskets, too. Papyrus needs a lot of water so it grows in the Nile Delta near the river. Papyrus needs warm weather to grow quickly.



# Dictation on Unit (3)

## Lesson (4)

جلور	برعم - نبتة
بنور	ورقة شجر
تربة	زهرة
يسلى	بلكونة
نباتات	ينمو

## Lesson (5)

زهرة عباد الشمس	وردة
زهرة اللونس	نبات الفول
شجرة السنط	شجرة البرتقال
نبات اليوس/القصب	شجرة الطرفاء
لقيل	فراشة
مطر	يحتاج

## Lesson (6)

مليار	مليون
يكس	يسبح
حلوى	بجعة
بنام	مفتاح كهربى
شريحة	شيشب - نعال
أرض	مزرعة
اجناد	مهم

## Lessons (4 & 5)

نبات البردي	المصريون القدماء
ثم	أولاً
بعد	بعد ذلك
يلت	أخيراً
شهور	سلال
ورق	ضوء الشمس

Help your child dictate these words.

ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - First Term (10)

# Activities on Unit (3)

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- ..... is a very special plant.  
a) Papyrus      b) Corn      c) Wheat      d) Maize
- The Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make  
a) pots      b) paper      c) walls      d) homes
- Papyrus needs a lot of .....  
a) milk      b) juice      c) oil      d) water
- Papyrus needs ..... weather  
a) cold      b) hot      c) warm      d) ice

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- There is not much rain in the ..... habitat  
a) desert      b) forest      c) river      d) lake
- I tidy my room and I ..... the floor  
a) cut      b) sweep      c) sleep      d) slice
- Tomatoes have ..... inside  
a) leaves      b) seeds      c) roots      d) shoots
- A billion is a ..... million  
a) thousand      b) hundred      c) ten      d) million

## 3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

leaves - waters - seeds - green - roots

My friend Seleem likes farms and plants. He likes the

- ..... color of the leaves. He likes to use the
- ..... to grow new plants. He
- ..... the plant
- ..... every day. The
- ..... grow under the soil. My friend becomes
- ..... very happy when there is a flower.

## Activities

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions

Tomatoes are green before they are red. Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes! We plant a seed and the plant grows. That is called germination. We water the plant every day and the roots grow under the soil. The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits.

#### A) Choose the correct answer.

- Tomatoes have ..... inside  
a) seeds      b) roots      c) leaves      d) fruit
- When we plant a seed, the plant .....  
a) gives      b) grows      c) dies      d) sleeps

#### B) Answer the following questions.

- What is the main idea of the text?
- What can we do with the seeds?

### 5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- My city is the ..... place to live in.
- I think a rose is the ..... beautiful flower.
- What is the ..... animal in the world?
- My bag is the ..... (big).

### 6 Punctuate the following.

- where do you live, Ahmed

### 7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

The life cycle of a tomato plant

Guiding words:

( seeds - water - roots - flowers - tomatoes )

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع: مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - First Term (10)

# Al-Azhar Corner

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع.

balcony - is - found - tomatoes

- Dad : Come and look!
- Seleem : What 1) ..... it, Dad
- Dad : Our tomato plants are growing on the 2) .....
- Seleem : Oh yes, but why are the 3) ..... green
- Dad : Tomatoes are green before they are red.
- Seleem : That's awesome! And I 4) ..... a red tomato

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع.

seed - shoots - plant - soil

- Omar : What is this, Dad?
- Dad : It is a sunflower.
- Omar : How do we 1) ..... a new sunflower
- Dad : We put the sunflower 2) ..... in soil and water
- Omar : Where do the 3) ..... grow
- Dad : The shoots grow above the 4) .....

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

1. big - flower - How - the - is - ?

2. the - grow - Roots - soil - under - .

3. above - soil - The shoot - the - grows - .

4. plant - does - Where - the - grow - ?



# Activities on Review (1)

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Damietta is an Egyptian  
a) farm      b) center      c) governorate      d) museum
- Its land is ..... in nutrients.  
a) rich      b) poor      c) empty      d) silent
- ..... catch thousands of fish.  
a) Farmers      b) Fishermen      c) Teachers      d) Doctors
- Life is ..... in Damietta.  
a) dirty      b) ugly      c) bad      d) good

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- I need to ..... my homework.  
a) redo      b) reclean      c) repaint      d) recycle
- Crocodiles are ..... animals.  
a) safe      b) nice      c) good      d) scary
- The roots grow ... the soil.  
a) on      b) under      c) above      d) next
- Camels are ..... for the desert.  
a) bad      b) sad      c) happy      d) perfect

## 3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

black - germination - flowers - green - seed

Our tomato plants are growing on the balcony! They have leaves and 1) ..... Tomatoes are 2) ..... before they are red. We plant a 3) ..... and the plant grows. That is called 4) .....

**4 Read the text and answer the questions:**

اقرأ نصي وأجب عن الأسئلة.

I love camels. They are very important animals in Egypt. They are strong and they can carry people and things to cross the desert. They are tall animals with thin legs. Their milk is delicious and we can use their fur to make clothes. Camels are good animals for the desert because they don't drink a lot of water. Their feet are flat so they can walk on sand in the desert. They can close their noses and eyes to stop the sand from coming in.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. Camels are \_\_\_\_\_, so they can carry people and things.  
a) weak      b) slow      c) bad      d) strong
2. Camels close their noses and eyes to stop the \_\_\_\_\_ from coming in.  
a) food      b) water      c) sand      d) milk

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. Why can camels walk in the desert?
4. How is the camel's milk?

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس.

1. I think the cheetah is the \_\_\_\_\_ (fast) animal.
2. An elephant is \_\_\_\_\_ (b.g) than a mouse.
3. I think beans are \_\_\_\_\_ (delicious) than potatoes.
4. I play sports \_\_\_\_\_ (but) exercise.

**6 Put the following.**

ضع علامات الرقيم على ما يلي

- papyrus is a very special plant

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن.

**The fennec fox**

Guiding words:

( desert - big ears - fur - warm )

# Unit 4

## Where do you live?

أين تعيش؟



### In this unit the student will ...

- listen, read, research and write about different houses and places in a town.  
يسمع و يقرأ و يبحث و يكتب عن مختلف المنازل والأماكن في المدينة.
- practice making sentences with prepositions.  
يسرب على تكوين الجمل باستخدام حروف الجر
- read and listen to a short story.  
يقرأ ويسمع إلى قصة قصيرة.
- learn about short say words with /f/ and /v/  
يتعلم ويقول كلمات بالأصوات (/f/) و (/v/)
- write a short article about his village or city.  
يكتب مقال قصير عن قريته أو مدينته
- research and make a poster.  
يبحث ويقوم بعمل ملصق.



# Lesson (1)

# AT HOME

## Vocabulary

### Types of houses أنواع المنازل



apartment

شقة



houseboat

منزل حاتم



tent

بضمة



house

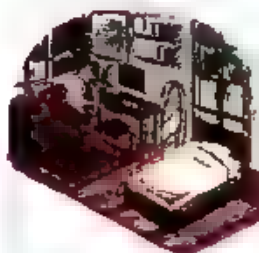
منزل

### At home في المنزل



kitchen

مطبخ



bedroom

حجرة نوم



bathroom

حمام



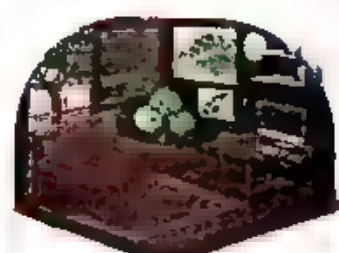
balcony

شرفة (بلكونه)



dining room

حجرة الطعام



living room

حجرة المعيشة



## Lesson (1)

### Extra vocabulary . كلمات إضافية

desert	صحراء	because	لأن	people	ناس
street	شارع	fantastic	رائع	outside	في الخارج
lovely	جميل - محبوب	favorite	مفضل	quietly	بهدوء
unusual	غير عادي	whole	كل	cloth	قماش

### Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

#### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past
relax	يسترخي relaxed
organize	يظم organized
produce	يُنتج produced
help	يساعد helped
look	ينظر looked

#### Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past
sit	يجلس sat
see	يرى saw
make	يصنع made
can	يستطيع could
do	يفعل did

### Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

see the whole street	يرى الشارع بأكمله
(be) made of cloth	مصنوع من القماش
for me	بالنسبة لي
do homework	يؤدي الواجب المنزلي
move to	ينقل إلى
Let's do it!	هيا بنا فعل ذلك!
That sounds good!	هذا يبدو جيدًا!
live on water	يعيش على المياه
live in	يعيش في
live with	يعيش مع

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - First Term 109

## Listen and read.

ستمع واقرأ.

Mom : Look at our lovely new apartment!

انظري إلى شقتنا الجديدة الجميلة!

Talía : It's fantastic!

إنها رائعة!

Mom : Which is your favorite room?

أي غرفة مفضلة لديك؟

Talía : For me, it's my bedroom. I can relax and do my homework quietly

تسمية لي، غرفة نومي، يمكنني الاسترخاء وأنا وأجبي المنزلي بهدوء.

Mom : My favorite is the living room with the balcony

I can see the whole street! Talía, can you help me organize the kitchen?

غرفة المفضلة لدي هي غرفة المعيشة والموجود بها شرفة. يمكنني رؤية الشارع بأكمله! هل يمكنك مساعدتي في تنظيم المطبخ يا تاليا!

Talía : That sounds good, let's do it!

نأيدو جيداً، هيا بنا نفعل ذلك!

## Answer the following questions.

1) What is Talía's favorite room?

2) What's Mom's favorite room?

3) How is their new apartment?

**Lesson (1)**  
**Look and read.**

انظر واقرأ.

## ***Different houses***



My aunt moved to a new apartment with her family. They are very happy because they have a big balcony.

أنتي عميت انتقلت الى شقة جديدة مع عائلتها. هم سعداء جداً لأنهم أصبحوا لديهم شرفة كبيرة.



My friend and her family live on a boat. It's small, but she loves living on water.

صديقتي وعائلتها يسكنون في قارب صغير، لكنها تحب العيش على الماء.



In the desert, some people live in a tent. This home is made of cloth.

في الصحراء، بعض الناس يسكنون في خيمة. هذا المنزل مصنوع من القماش.



I love living in a house because it is a big building. My grandparents live with us. I can play outside with my brother and sister.

أنا أحب العيش في بيت كبير لأننا نعيش فيه مع جدتي وجدتي. أستطيع اللعب بالخارج مع أخي وأختي.

**Answer the following questions.**

1) Why are your aunt and her family happy?

2) Where do some people live in the desert?

Help your child look and read.

ساعد طفلك ان يقرأ ويقرأ

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - First Term 11



## Activities

### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائره حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Hamza lives in a/an .....  
a) tent      b) apartment      c) house      d) houseboat
- He plays games with his .....  
a) brother      b) sister      c) father      d) mother
- He helps his mother in the .....  
a) bedroom      b) balcony      c) living room      d) kitchen
- He plays football on .....  
a) Sunday      b) Monday      c) Friday      d) Saturday

### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

قرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

living room - fantastic - bedroom - relax

We moved to a new apartment. It's 1) .....  
My favorite room is my 2) ..... I can  
3) ..... and do my homework quietly. My mom's favorite  
room is the 4) ..... with the balcony

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- My mom cooks in the .....  
a) living room      b) dining room      c) kitchen      d) bathroom
- I wash my face in the .....  
a) dining room      b) bathroom      c) bedroom      d) balcony
- We sleep in the .....  
a) bedroom      b) dining room      c) kitchen      d) bathroom
- In the desert, some people live in a/an ..... made of cloth  
a) house      b) apartment      c) houseboat      d) tent



## Lesson (1)

5. I watch TV with my family in the . . . . .  
a) living room   b) balcony   c) dining room   d) bathroom
6. She loves living on water. She lives on a/an . . . . .  
a) houseboat   b) house   c) apartment   d) tent

**4** Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

I love living in a house because it is a big building. My grandparents live with us. I can play outside with my brother and sister. My friend and her family live on a houseboat. It's small, but she loves living on water.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. I can play . . . . . with my brother and sister.  
a) outside   b) on   c) over   d) inside
2. My friend loves living on . . . . .  
a) tent   b) water   c) farm   d) work

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. Why do you love living in a house? . . . . .
4. Where does your friend live? . . . . .

**5** Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- which is your favorite room

**6** Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

My new apartment

Guiding words:

( live - apartment - bedroom - living room - balcony )

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

AL-BAHER - Connect (4) - First Term (13)

## Lesson (2)

## WHERE IS IT?

### Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية



school

مدرسة



museum

متحف



hospital

مستشفى



office

مكتب



shopping mall

مجمع تجاري (مول تجاري)



post office

مكتب بريد



supermarket

سوبر ماركت

### Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

village

قرية

the Nile

النيل

clothes

ملابس

sick

مرض

couch

أريكة - كنبه

work

عمل

park

حديقة

learn

تعلم

### Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

next to the Nile

بجوار نهر النيل

buy food

أشترط طعاما

send letters

يرسل خطابات

live in

أعيش في

## Lesson (2)

### Definitions

(تعريفات)

supermarket	a place where we buy food	سوبر ماركت
post office	a place where we send letters	مكتب بريد
school	a place where we learn	مدرسة
shopping mall	a place where we buy clothes and shoes	مركز تسوق
office	a place where my mom and dad work	مكتب
hospital	a place where we go when we are sick	مستشفى

### Look and read.

انظر وقرا

My name's Zein. I live in a village next to the Nile. I live in a house with my family. Our house is not the biggest in the village. It is between a yellow house and a brown house. There are tall trees behind the house.



اسمى زين. انا اعيش في قرية بجانب النيل. انا اعيش في بيت مع عائلتي. بيتنا ليس اكبر في القرية. انا اعيش بين بيت اصفر وبيت بني. هناك اشجار عالية خلف البيت.



Help your child look and read.

ساعد طفلك ان ينظر ويقرأ

AL-BAHER - Connect (4) - First Term 115

# Language Focus

## Prepositions of place حروف جر المكان



on  
على



in  
في



under  
تحت



above  
فوق



next to  
بجوار



between  
بين



behind  
خلف



in front of  
أمام



**We use prepositions of place to say where something**

نستخدم حروف جر المكان لتعريف عن مكان شيء.

**Asking and answering about places:**

بالإجابة عن السؤال

**Where + is + place (نكرة) ?**

- Where is the museum?

The place + is + preposition of place + another place

- The museum is next to the park.

- Where is the museum?

- The kitchen is next to the living room.

- Where is the couch?

- The couch is in the living room.

- Where is your house?

- My house is near the tall house and the tree.

Fill: Unit 14, Where do you live?

Help your child use prepositions of place.

ساعد طفلك استخدام حروف جر المكان.



## Lesson (2)

Look and complete the sentences.

انظر واكمل الجمل.



The tent is .....  
the car.



There's a plant .....  
the armchair.



The pink house is ..... the red  
house and the yellow house.



There are 4 chairs and a  
table ..... the balcony.



The trees are .....  
the house.



There is a cat .....  
the table.



# Activities

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I live in a village next ..... the Nile.  
a) at                      b) of                      c) to                      d) by
2. There is a plant ..... the school.  
a) in                      b) next                      c) behind                      d) front
3. I sit ..... Ali and Omar.  
a) in                      b) on                      c) above                      d) between
4. A/An ..... is a place where I learn.  
a) hospital                      b) school                      c) zoo                      d) office
5. A ..... is a place where we send letters.  
a) park                      b) post office                      c) hospital                      d) school
6. The shopping mall is ..... to the supermarket.  
a) behind                      b) next                      c) in                      d) above
7. My house is ..... the tall house and the tree.  
a) between                      b) in front of                      c) behind                      d) on
8. There is a cat in ..... of the tree.  
a) between                      b) behind                      c) next                      d) front

**2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.** اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

between - behind - next - biggest

My name's Zein. I live in a village 1) ..... to the Nile. I live  
a house with my family. It's not the 2) ..... in the village. I  
3) ..... a yellow house and a red house. There are tall trees  
4) ..... the house.

## Lesson (2)

**3 Read the text and answer the questions.** اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

My name's Zein. I live in a village next to the Nile. I live in a house with my family. Our house is not the biggest in the village. It is between a yellow house and a brown house. There are tall trees behind the house.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. The underlined word "behind" is the opposite of " ....".  
a) in front of    b) in    c) on    d) under
2. Zein's house is ..... a yellow house and a brown house.  
a) in    b) between    c) under    d) on

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. Who does Zein live with? .....
4. Where is Zein's house? .....

**4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

اقرأ واكتب لشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. .... (When) is the school? - It's next to the park.
2. The hospital is ..... (behind) to the school.
3. The shopping mall is in ..... (next) of the post office.
4. The park is next ..... (on) the supermarket.
5. The school is ..... (on) the hospital and the school.
6. My school is ..... (behind) to the hospital.
7. The teacher is in ..... (next) of the students.

**5 Punctuate the following.**

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- the hospital is next to the school

# GIVING DIRECTIONS

Listen and repeat.

يستمع وكرر.

## Giving Directions وصف الاتجاهات



Turn right.

اتجه يمينًا.



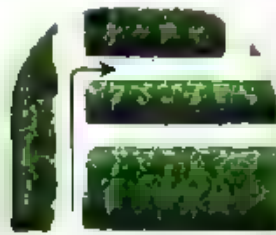
Go straight ahead.

مصر للأمام مباشرة.



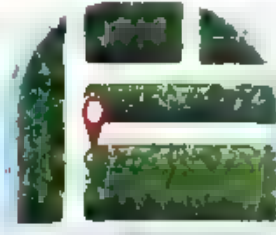
Turn left.

اتجه يسارًا.



Take the second right.

خذ المنعطف الثاني يمينًا.



It's on the corner.

إنه على الناصية (في الزاوية).

## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Excuse me!

معذرة

Thank you!

شكرا لك!

I'm so happy!

أنا سعيد جدًا

It's on the left

إنه على اليسار

See you soon!

أراك قريبًا

come to

تأتي إلى

on the other side

على الجانب الآخر

Here are

هنا يوجد

near my house

بالقرب من منزلي



## Lesson (3 / A)

Listen, read and follow the directions.

استمع واقرأ واتبع الاتجاهات.

Omar : Excuse me, where's the post office?

Ali : Go straight ahead.

Turn right. Take the second left. It's on the corner.



Omar : Thank you!

Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.

Dina is going to visit her friend Fareeda. Read and follow the directions. Help Dina find her friend's house.

Hi Dina!

I'm so happy you are coming to my house today. Here are some directions. From the corner of South Street with Lateef Street, go straight ahead. Take the second right to Abdelwahab Street. Go straight ahead. Turn left at the supermarket. My house is between the supermarket and the school.

See you soon.

Fareeda



مرحباً دينا

أنا سعيدة جداً لأنك ستأتي إلى منزلي اليوم. إليك بعض الاتجاهات. من ناصبة الشارع الجنوبي مع شارع لطيف انطلقني إلى الأمام مباشرة. خذي المنعطف الثاني يميناً إلى شارع عبدالوهاب. اذهبي إلى الأمام مباشرة. انعطفي يساراً عند السوبر ماركت. منزلي بين السوبر ماركت والمدرسة. أراك قريباً فريدا

Help your child listen, look and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع وينظر ويقرأ.

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - First Term 121



## Activities

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Ali lives in a small .....  
a) village      b) town      c) city      d) tent
2. Ali's school is next to the .....  
a) park      b) hospital      c) zoo      d) post office
3. .... the hospital, there is a park  
a) Next to      b) Behind      c) In front of      d) On
4. Ali often plays football in the .....  
a) school      b) park      c) hospital      d) zoo

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. .... right. The zoo is on the left  
a) Turn      b) Take      c) Go      d) Run
2. The hospital is ..... the corner  
a) in      b) of      c) on      d) above
3. .... is the school? - It's on the right  
a) What      b) How      c) When      d) Where
4. Go straight ..... The park is on the corner  
a) ahead      b) head      c) right      d) heads

**3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.**

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

turn - second right - supermarket - corner - directions

I'm so happy you are coming to my house today. Here are some  
1) ..... From the  
2) ..... of South Street with Lateef Street, go straight ahead. Take  
the 3) ..... to Abdelwahab Street. Go straight ahead. Turn left at the  
4) ..... My house is between the supermarket and the school.

# LIVING ON A BOAT

## Vocabulary

tourist boats	قوارب سياحية	fun	متعة	child	طفل
interesting	شيق	Chinese	اللغة الصينية	boring	ممل
summer	فصل الصيف	English	اللغة الإنجليزية	important	هام
suddenly	فجأة	parents	الوالدان	friend	صديق

## Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs

Present	Past
call	ينادي called
smile	بتسم smiled
save	يقعد saved
decide	يقرر decided
jump	يقفز jumped

### Irregular verbs

Present	Past
fall	يسقط fell
say	يقول said
know	يعرف knew
swim	يسبح swam
speak	يتحدث spoke

## Important expressions and prepositions

travel up and down	يسافر ذهاباً وإياباً
fell into the river	سقط في النهر
from all over the world	من كل أنحاء العالم
work on tourist boats	يعمل على المراكب السياحية
speak with	يتحدث مع
Please help me!	ساعدني رجاءاً

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

ALBAHER - Connect (4) - First Term 123

Look and read.

## Living on a boat

My friend Sherif lives on a boat in the summer. His parents work on tourist boats so he goes with them. They travel up and down the Nile.



يقيم صديقي شريف على قارب سياحية لذلك يذهب معهم. وهم يسافرون هناك

في الصيف

He likes the summer very much. He sees many interesting places and he meets people from all over the world. He speaks English and Chinese with the tourists.

هو يحب الصيف كثيرا. يرى أماكن مثيرة للاهتمام ويلتقي بـ جميع أنحاء العالم ويتحدث بالإنجليزية والصينية

مع السياح

One day, the boat stopped and Sherif saw some children playing. Suddenly a small child fell into the river! The child shouted 'Please help me!'

في ذات يوم توقف القارب. رأى شريف بعض أطفال يلعبون. وفجأة سقط طفل صغير في النهر. صرخ الطفل «من فضلكم

ساعدوني»

Sherif called his dad. Sherif's dad saw the child and jumped into the river. He swam and saved the child! The child smiled and said, 'Thank you so much!' Sherif was very happy, but he also decided to learn to swim.

حتى شريف وادعاه. رأى شريف والده الطفل وسبح وانقذ الطفل. ابتسم الطفل وقال "شكرا جزيلا" كان شريف سعيدا

بأنه أنقذ الطفل. قرر شريف أن يتعلم السباحة



# Pronunciation

Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

f / f /

v / v /



fish سمكة



foot قدم



fan مروحة



face وجه



living room

غرفة معيشة



vegetables خضروات



van

شاحنة صغيرة

Tip!



Touch your neck with your finger. Say "fish".  
Your neck doesn't move.

المس رقبتك بإصبعك وقل كلمة "fish"، ستلاحظ أن رقبتك لا تتحرك.

Say "van". Your neck moves.

قل "van" رقبتك تتحرك



# Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

يسمع وصيغ دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- My friend Hany lives on a  
a) boat      b) farm      c) tent      d) houseboat
- His ..... work on tourist boat  
a) uncles      b) parents      c) aunts      d) friends
- They travel ..... and down the Nile  
a) of      b) in      c) up      d) on
- He likes the ..... very much  
a) winter      b) fall      c) spring      d) summer

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر إجابة الصحيحة.

- We travel ..... and down the Nile  
a) on      b) at      c) by      d) up
- I swam and ..... the child  
a) saved      b) played      c) decided      d) liked
- The child ..... "Please help me"  
a) played      b) shouted      c) ran      d) smiled
- I ..... to learn to swim  
a) travelled      b) walked      c) decided      d) saw
- He ..... English and Chinese with the tourists  
a) works      b) lives      c) decides      d) speaks

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

world - English - interesting - down

Hamdy likes the summer very much. He travels up and

- ..... the Nile. He sees many
- ..... places. He meets people from all over the
- ..... He speaks
- ..... with the tourists.

## Lesson (3 / B)

**A) Read the text and answer the questions.**

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة

Sherif works on tourist boats. One day, the boat stopped and Sherif saw some children playing. Suddenly, a small child fell into the river. The child shouted, "Please help me!". Sherif swam and saved the child.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

- The children were .....  
a) eating      b) playing      c) drinking      d) sleeping
- A small child ..... into the river.  
a) flew      b) fell      c) filled      d) felt

**B) Answer the following questions.**

- What did Sherif see? .....
- Where does Sherif work? .....

**C) Punctuate the following.**

صح علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- he speaks English and Chinese

**D) Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Living on a boat

Guiding words:

( boat- summer- tourist)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

AL-BAHER - Connect (4) - First Term 12

# Lessons (4 | 5)

## WRITING PROJECT

### Vocabulary

Listen and repeat.



Sahl Hasheesh

سهل حشيش



beach

شاطئ



bazaar

بازار



the Sahara Desert

الصحراء الكبرى

### Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

Hurghada	مدينة العردقة	fact	حقيقة	near	قرب
worker	عامل / عاملة	check	يفحص	photo	صورة
bold	خط عريض	drawings	رسومات	island	جزيرة
diagram	مخطط	map	خريطة	city	مدينة
tourist	سائح	east	شرق	about	في
south	جنوب	safaris	رحلات سفاري	fresh	أزاح

### Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

There are lots of interesting things to do.

هناك الكثير من الأشياء الممتعة لتقوم بها.

in the east of Egypt on the Red Sea

إلى شرق مصر على ساحل البحر الأحمر

go on safaris

أذهب في رحلات سفاري

on the map

في الخريطة

on the Red Sea

في البحر الأحمر

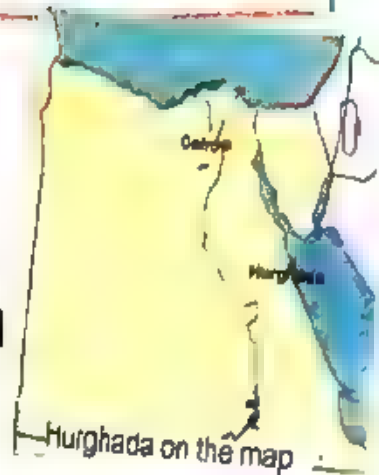


## Lessons (4 & 5)

Look at the table and read Mariam's article about Hurghada.



### Hurghada - My town



City	Hurghada
Where is it?	east of Egypt
How many people live there?	about 190,000 people
Interesting things in Hurghada	beach, Sahara Desert, Sahl Hasheesh, bazaars, safaris

Hi, I'm Mariam. I live in a city called Hurghada. It's in the east of Egypt on the Red Sea. It's a big city and about 190,000 people live here.

In Hurghada, there's a beach and there are lots of interesting things to do. There is the Sahara Desert where lots of tourists go on safaris. We have Sahl Hasheesh in the south of Hurghada. It has some beautiful houses and interesting bazaars.

مرحباً، أنا مريم، أعيش في مدينة تسمى العردقة تقع في شرق مصر على البحر الأحمر. إنها مدينة كبيرة ويعيش فيها حوالي ١٩ ألف شخص. يوجد شاطئ في العردقة، وهناك الكثير من الأشياء الممتعة التي يمكن القيام بها. توجد الصحراء الكبرى حيث يقوم الكثير من السياح برحلات سفاري. نحب أيضاً سهل حشيش في جنوب العردقة. وبها بعض المنازل الجميلة والمزارات المثيرة للاهتمام.



Sahara Desert



Hurghada beach



Sahl Hasheesh

Help your child read about "Hurghada".

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن مدينة العردقة.

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - First Term 129



## Writing



- Complete the table about your village, town or city

Village / Town / City

Where is it?

How many people live there?

Interesting things in your village / town / city



Write about your village, town or city.

يُمكنك استخدام (صورة - خريطة - رسومات - مخطط - خرائط شبيقة)

My

Hi, I'm ..... I live in a city / town / village called ..... It is in ..... About ..... people live here.

There is a ..... There are lots of ..... We also have .....

There are ..... here. We don't have ..... but we have .....

## Lessons (4 & 5)

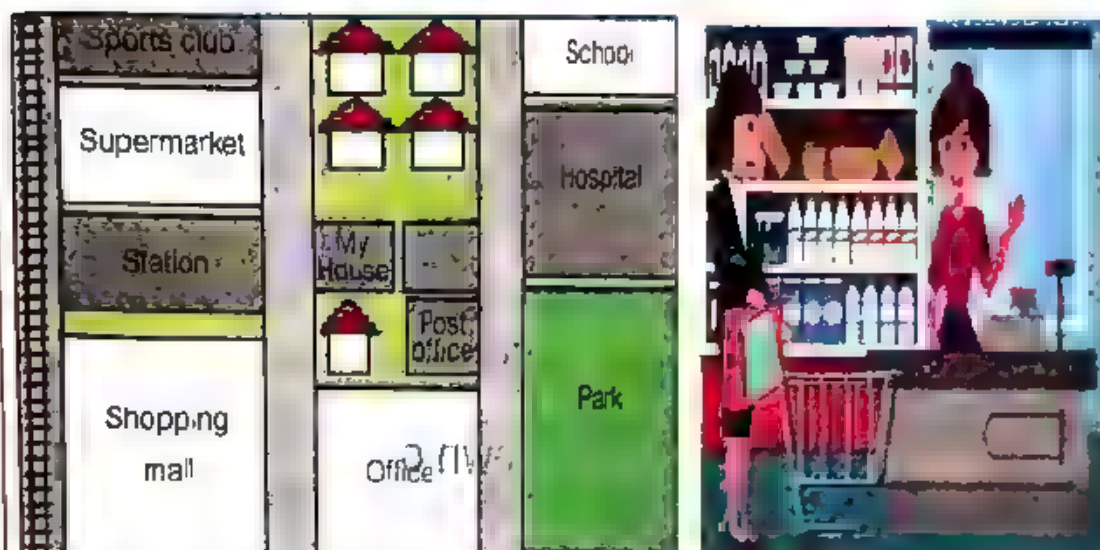
look and read.

انظر واقرأ.



## Project

The people who help us: the supermarket worker



This is Mona. She works at the supermarket near my house.

My family and I see her every week when we buy food. Mona checks the food is fresh. She helps us when we can't find something. She is very kind and happy.

هذه موني. إنها تعمل في السوبر ماركت بالقرب من منزلي.  
 أنا عائلتي وأنا نراها كل أسبوع عندما نشتري طعاماً. موني تتأكد من أن الطعام طازج وفي توافر عندما لا يمكننا العثور على شيء ما. إنها لطيفة وسعيدة جداً.

### A) Read and write True (T) or False (F).

- 1) Mona works in a hospital. ( )
- 2) Mona is very kind and happy. ( )

### B) Answer the following questions.

3) Where does Mona work?

4) How does she help you?



# Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Aya lives in .....  
a) Hurghada    b) Alexandria    c) Giza    d) Cairo
2. It has some .....  
a) dirty    b) ugly    c) beautiful    d) bad
3. It has interesting .....  
a) farms    b) lakes    c) oases    d) bazaars
4. There is the Sahara Desert where lots of tourists go on .....  
a) safaris    b) fishing    c) camping    d) walking

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

أكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

people - beach - Egypt - big

Sara lives in a city called Hurghada. It's in the east of

- 1) ..... on the Red Sea.
- 2) ..... city and about 190,000
- 3) ..... live here. There
- 4) ..... in Hurghada

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر لإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I live in a ..... called Hurghada  
a) city    b) village    c) country    d) tent
2. A lot of ..... visit Hurghada  
a) farmers    b) teachers    c) tourists    d) doctors
3. You can ride ..... in the desert  
a) camels    b) dogs    c) lions    d) snakes
4. Hurghada is on the Red .....  
a) River    b) Desert    c) Lake    d) Sea



## Lessons (4 & 5)

5. We can buy papyrus from  
a) supermarket   b) bazaars   c) beaches   d) hospitals
6. There is a beautiful ..... in Hurghada.  
a) beach   b) lake   c) ocean   d) river
7. Hurghada is in the ..... of Egypt.  
a) north   b) south   c) east   d) west

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions. قرأوا نصاً وجابوا أسئلة.

Hurghada is in the east of Egypt on the Red Sea. It's a big city and about 190,000 people live there. In Hurghada, there's a beach and there are lots of interesting things to do. There is the Sahara Desert where lots of tourists go on safaris.

#### A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The text is about .....  
a) Cairo   b) Giza   c) Hurghada   d) Alexandria
2. Hurghada is a big .....  
a) farm   b) city   c) town   d) village

#### B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where is Hurghada?

4. How many people live there?

### 5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

My city

Guiding words.

( Alexandria - north - sea - beaches )



# Review on Unit (4)

## Buildings



house



apartment



tent



houseboat



school



hospital



shopping mall



supermarket



post office

## Prepositions of place



above



behind



between



on



In front of



next to



under



in

## Where do you live?

f /f/



fish



foot



fan



face

v /v/



living room



vegetables



van

- Where is the hospital?
- The hospital is next to the school.
- Go straight ahead. Turn right. It's on the corner.

## Directions



Turn left.



Go straight ahead.



Turn right



## Writing Corner



Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

### *My house*

My family and I live in a big house. It has many rooms. My favorite room is the bedroom with a balcony, because I can enjoy the view of the street and the garden.

### *Kinds of homes*

There are many kinds of homes such as houses, apartments, tents and houseboats. Many people live in houses or apartments. People in the desert live in tents. People who love water live on houseboats.

### *Hurghada*

Hurghada is in the east of Egypt on the Red Sea. It's a big city and about 190.000 people live there. In Hurghada, there's a beach and there are lots of interesting things to do. There is the Sahara Desert where lots of tourists go on safaris. We have Sahl Hasheesh in the south of Hurghada. It has some beautiful houses and interesting bazaars.

# Dictation

## Leçon 1

.....	يهدوء
.....	شقة
.....	مطبخ
.....	الحمام
.....	حجرة الطعام
.....	مُفضل

## Leçon 2

.....	سوبر ماركت
.....	مكتب بريد
.....	مجمع تجاري
.....	قرية
.....	بجوار
.....	أمام
.....	فوق
.....	بين

## Leçon 3

.....	قوارب سياحية
.....	اللغة الصينية
.....	اللغة الإنجليزية
.....	فصل الصيف
.....	شيق

## Leçon 4

.....	صورة
.....	مدينة
.....	خريطة
.....	شاطئ
.....	مخطط



# Unit (4)



## Activities on Unit (4)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- My sister works at a  
a) supermarket b) library c) hotel d) hospital
- People buy ..... at the supermarket.  
a) clothes b) food c) shoes d) books
- She ..... the food is fresh.  
a) sings b) plays c) sends d) checks
- She is very ..... and happy.  
a) ugly b) bad c) kind d) sad

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Go straight ..... and turn right.  
a) head b) right c) left d) ahead
- The chair is 'in front ..... the library..  
a) on b) to c) of d) at
- We buy clothes and shoes at the .....  
a) shopping mall b) park c) zoo d) hospital
- We go to the ..... when we are sick.  
a) post office b) hospital c) supermarket d) park

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من الصندوق.

right - next - station - between - in front of

In my town, the shopping mall is on the other side of the

- ....., so the station is
- ..... the supermarket and the shopping mall. My dad's office is
- ..... to the park. It is
- ..... the post office.

Help your child deal with such questions.

AI-BAHER - Connect (4) - First Term 137

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

My friend Sherif lives on a boat in the summer. His parents work on tourist boats so he goes with them. They travel up and down the Nile. He likes the summer very much. He sees many interesting places and he meets people from all over the world. He speaks English and Chinese with the tourists.

## A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Sherif lives on a boat in the .....  
a) summer      b) spring      c) winter      d) fall
2. The word ..... in the text means your father and mother.  
a) tourists      b) summer      c) interesting      d) parents

## B) Answer the following questions.

1. Where do Sherif's parents work? .....
2. What is Sherif's favorite season? .....

## 5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ وكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. ..... (What) is the book? - It's under the table.
2. The chair is next ..... (in) the sofa.
3. My house is ..... (behind) the park and the library.
4. The couch is ..... (above) the living room.

## 6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- does Tarek like crocodiles

## 7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إتشادية من (18) كلمة عن:

## Places in my town

Guiding words:

(learn - buy food - hospital - send letters)

# Al-Azhar Corner

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل الحوار بكلمات من الصندوق

straight - office - right - corner

- Amr : Excuse me, where is the post office?   
 Sara : Go straight ahead. Take the second right. It's on the corner.   
 Amr : Thank you.

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل الحوار بكلمات من الصندوق

food - sell - supermarket - near

- Seif : Hi, where do you work?   
 Safia : Hi, I work in a supermarket.   
 Seif : Is it near your house?   
 Safia : Yes, it's near my house.   
 Seif : What do you sell?   
 Safia : We sell fresh food.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة

- an - in - I - live - apartment - .
- is - museum - Where - the - ?
- under - table - There's - the - a cat - .
- checks - the - Ali - food - fresh - is - .
- in - a village - She - next to - lives - the Nile - .



# Unit 5

## Where do you work?

أين تعمل؟



### In this unit the student will ...

إعادة الوحدة الطالب سوف ...

• listen, read, and write about workers in his /her community

يستمع ويقرأ ويكتب عن العمال في المجتمع

• learn about electricity.

تعلم عن الكهرباء.

• practice using this, that these those

تدرب على استخدام (this , that , these , those)

• practice word stress.

تدرب على الكلمات المشددة.

• think and write about the pros and cons of different jobs.

تفكر ويكتب عن إيجابيات وسلبيات الوظائف المختلفة.

• make a report about workers in his /her community.

لقد يعمل تقرير عن العمال في المجتمع.



# I LOVE MY JOB

## Vocabulary

Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد

## Jobs in my community

وظائف في مجتمعي



mail carrier

ساعي لبريد



bus driver

سائق أوبوس



mechanic

ميكانيكي



electrician

فني كهرباء



plumber

سباك



garbage collector

عامل نظافة / جامع بقمامة

## Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

pipes

أنابيب (مياه)

being

difficult

صعب

wet

faucet

مقبض

problem

مشكلة

interesting

young

شبابي

messy

فوضوي - غير مرتب

different

driving

مختلف

parcel

طرد بريدي

garbage

trash

مقابس

sockets

مقابس

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يعرف هذه الكلمات.

AI-BAHER - Connect (4) - First Term (14)

الممسوحة صوتياً بـ CamScanner

## Unit (5)

### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs

Present	Past
collect	يجمع collect ed
want	يريد wanted
hope	يأمل hope d
wait	ينتظر wait ed
talk	يتكلم talked
fix	يصلح fixed
drip	ينقط dripped

#### Irregular verbs

Present	Past
take out	أخرج took out
forget	نسى forgot
drive	سار drove
make	صنع made

### Important expressions and prepositions

So what happened?	ماذا ماذا حدث؟	much better at	أفضل بكثير في
What about you?	ماذا عندك؟	put out	أخرج
Wait please....	انتظر من فضلك	lots of people	كثير من الناس
work hard	يعمل بجد	around 20.000.000 tons	
have to	يجب أن		حوالي عشرين مليون طن

### Did you know?



Cairo produces around 20,000,000 tons of garbage every year. Garbage collectors work hard to collect it all.

تنتج القاهرة حوالي عشرين مليون طن من القمامة كل عام. جامعي القمامة يعملون بجد لجمع  
القمامة

## Lesson (1)

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ

**Ze'nab** : Dad, do you like your job?

يا دكتور هل تحب عملك؟

**Dad** : Yes, I love being a plumber. Sometimes it's wet and messy because I have to fix pipes and faucets.

نعم أنا أحب كور سمك في مصر وأحبه يكون هناك رطبا وقصود لأنني يجب أن أصلح

الأنابيب والصنابير

**Ze'nab** : Did you want to do a different job when you were young?

هل كنت تريد أن تعمل في عمل مختلف عندما كنت صغيرا؟

**Dad** : Yes, I wanted to be a bus driver or a mechanic.

نعم، كنت أن كور سائق حافلة وميكانيكي.

**Ze'nab** : So what happened?

ماذا حدث؟

**Dad** : Well, I don't really like driving! I was much better at fixing pipes and faucets than cars!

حسنا... أنا أحب العمل هنا كنت أفضل بكثير في إصلاح الأنابيب والصنابير من سيارات!

**Ze'nab** : What about you, Youssef? Do you like being an electrician?

... ماذا عنك يوسف؟ هل تحب أن تكون كهربائيا؟

**Youssef** : Yes I love making things work!

نعم أنا أحب جعل الأشياء تعمل.

**Dad** : Oh look, here's the mail carrier! I hope he has my parcel...

أوه انظر، ها هو ساعي البريد! أتمنى أن يكون لديه الطرد لبريدي الخاص بي...

: And there's the garbage collector! Oh, I forgot to take out the trash! Wait please ...

وهناك جامع القمامة! أوه، لقد نسيت أن أخرج القمامة! انتظر من فضلك...

## Ask and answer.



Which job is the most difficult? Why?

أي الوظائف أكثر صعوبة؟ ولماذا؟



I think being a mail carrier is the most difficult as you have to work all day.

أعتقد كونك ساعي بريد هي الأكثر صعوبة لأنك يجب أن تعمل طوال اليوم.



Which job is the most interesting? Why?

أي الوظائف أكثر متعة؟ ولماذا؟



I think being a bus driver is the most interesting job. You drive to many different places and help lots of people.

تعتقد كونك سائق حافلة هي الأكثر متعة، فأنت تقود الحافلة لأماكن مختلفة وتساعد الكثير من الناس.





# Activities

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

ستمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Ola's father is a/an .....  
a) plumber      b) mechanic      c) bus driver      d) electrician
2. He is good at ..... pipes and faucets.  
a) driving      b) fixing      c) taking      d) talking
3. Ola's brother is a/an .....  
a) mechanic      b) bus driver      c) plumber      d) electrician
4. Ola's brother loves making things .....  
a) break      b) damage      c) stop      d) work

## 2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

mechanic - plumber - mail carrier - fixes - collects

- All jobs are important. There are many workers that help us.
- 1) ..... delivers your parcels. An electrician
  - 2) ..... sockets. A garbage collector
  - 3) ..... the trash. Sometimes it's wet and messy, so we need
  - 4) ..... to fix pipes and faucets.

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. A/An ..... fixes faucets.  
a) mechanic      b) plumber      c) electrician      d) bus driver
2. A bus driver ..... to many places.  
a) swims      b) collects      c) drives      d) fixes
3. A/An ..... makes things work.  
a) electrician      b) mail carrier      c) mechanic      d) plumber
4. The garbage collector collects .....  
a) parcels      b) trash      c) candy      d) food

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

My name is Heba. I live in Cairo. My father is a plumber. When he was young he wanted to be a bus driver but he was better at fixing pipes and faucets than cars. My brother Ali is an electrician. He loves his job. He loves making things work.

## A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Heba lives in

- a) Giza      b) Alexandria      c) Cairo      d) Aswan

2. Heba's father is a/an

- a) bus driver      b) electrician      c) mechanic      d) plumber

## B) Answer the following questions.

3. What did Heba's father want to be when he was young?

4. What is Ali's job?

## 5 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- youssef is an electrician

## 6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Jobs

Guiding words:

( plumber - faucets - electrician - work - bus driver )

# Lesson (2/1)

## IS IT NEAR OR FAR?

### Demonstrative pronouns

ضمائر الإشارة

We use "Demonstrative pronouns" to say how close an object is to the speaker.

نستخدم "ضمائر الإشارة" لتوضيح مدى قرب الشيء من المتحدث.

### For singular or uncountable nouns

للأسماء المفردة أو الأسماء التي لا تعد

#### This

نستخدم للإشارة إلى اسم مفرد / غير معدود قريب.

#### That

نستخدم للإشارة إلى اسم مفرد / غير معدود بعيد.

**This is + singular noun**

(اسم مفرد)



This is the socket the electrician is fixing.

هذا هو المقبس الذي يقوم الكهربائي بتثبيته.

**That is + singular noun**

(اسم مفرد)



That is the water dripping from the faucet.

هذا هو الماء الذي يتقاطر من الصنبور.

## For plural nouns

للأسماء الجمع

## These (هذه)

تستخدم للإشارة إلى اسم جمع قريب.

## Those (تلك)

تستخدم للإشارة إلى اسم جمع بعيد.

These are + plural noun.

(اسم جمع)

Those are + plural noun.

(اسم جمع)



These are the plumber's tools.

هذه أدوات سباك.



Those drivers are driving the new buses.

تلك السائقين يقودون الحافلات الجديدة.

1 Fill in the spaces with:

ملأ الفراغات بـ:

That - These - This - Those

1. Can you see?

..... is the mail carrier  
(far)

2. .... is my aunt.

Her name is Amira.

She's a teacher.

(near)

3. .... children are  
going to school.  
(near)4. .... children are  
watching TV. (far)



## Lesson (2 / A)

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. .... mail carrier is riding a bicycle.  
a) That      b) These      c) They      d) Those
2. .... mechanics work in the repair shop.  
a) Their      b) Those      c) This      d) That
3. .... bus is taking me to school.  
a) These      b) This      c) Then      d) Those
4. .... are the bus drivers.  
a) Their      b) This      c) That      d) These
5. This ..... my car.  
a) is      b) have      c) are      d) were
6. That is my .....  
a) parents      b) uncle      c) cousins      d) aunts

**3 Change the sentences into plural as the example.** حول إلى الجمع كالأمثلة.

1. This is the faucet in my bathroom.

These are the faucets in our bathrooms.

2. That is the mechanic who fixed my car.

3. This is the garbage collector who collects our trash.

4. That is the plumber who came to our house.

**4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.** اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. I bought ..... (these) car.
2. .... (That) are the plumber's tools.
3. The mail carrier delivered ..... (these) parcel.
4. That ..... (are) my pen.
5. This ..... (plumbers) fixes the pipes.
6. This ..... (are) my father.
7. .... (These) bus takes me to school.

# Lesson

# ELECTRICITY

## Electricity الكهرباء



plugs  
فيشة / قابس



burn  
يحرق



socket  
مقبس كهربائي



electric shock  
صدمة كهربائية



dangerous  
خطير

wet

مبلل

dry

flash

وميض

safely

storm

عاصفة

lightning

electrical

كهربائي

speed

electricity

كهرباء

### Conjugation of verbs

نصريف الأفعال

#### Regular verbs

#### Irregular verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
study	يُدرِّس studied	become	يصح became
practice	يُتَدَرَّب practiced	put	يضع put
touch	يَمَس touched	know	يعرف knew
control	يُنَظِّم controlled	burn	يحرق burnt

### Important expressions and prepositions

لتعابير و حروف جر عامة

put (something) into

يضع شيئاً في work safely

عمل بأمان

control the body

يتحكم في الجسم start a fire

تفجير حريقاً

get electric shock

يصاب بصدمة كهربائية make sure

تأكد

close to

يُعرف كيف يقوم به know how to

يُعرف كيف يقوم به

## Lesson (2 / B)

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

### Amira the electrician

This is Amira, she's an electrician. She studied and for three years before she became an electrician. She knows how to work safely with electricity.



هذه أميرة: هي من كهرباء. درست وتدربت على العمل لمدة ٣ أعوام قبل أن تصبح فني كهرباء، وهي تعرف كيفية العمل مع الكهرباء بشكل آمن.

Interviewer : Tell us something interesting about electricity.

مُحاور: قلنا شيء مثير للاهتمام عن الكهرباء.

Amira : Did you know, electricity travels very fast, close to the speed of light. In a storm we sometimes see a flash of lightning. There is a huge amount of energy in an electrical storm.



هل تعلم أن الكهرباء تنتقل بسرعة كبيرة، قريبة من سرعة الضوء في العاصفة نرى أحياناً وميض من البرق هناك كمية كبيرة من الطاقة في العاصفة الكهربائية.

Interviewer : Is electricity dangerous?

Amira : Yes, very dangerous. If we get an electric shock, we can't control our bodies. It can also burn us.



نعم، إنها خطيرة جداً. إذا حصلنا صدمة كهربية فمن مستطيع التحكم بأجسادنا ويمكن أيضاً أن نحرق.

Interviewer : How can we use electricity safely?

Amira : Never touch anything electrical with wet hands. Never put anything into a socket, only use plugs.



لا نلمس أبداً أي شيء كهربائي وبسبب مبللة يجب ألا نضع أي شيء في مقبس الكهرباء، استخدم المقابس (الغيشة) فقط.



# Activities

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اسمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Amira is a/an .....  
a) electrician    b) mechanic    c) plumber    d) bus driver
- She studied for ..... years  
a) four    b) three    c) five    d) six
- She knows how to work ..... with electricity  
a) badly    b) quickly    c) safely    d) sadly
- She says electricity is .....  
a) helpful    b) useful    c) safe    d) dangerous

## 2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

safely - wet - shock - control - burn

- If we get an electric 1, ..... , we can't  
2) ..... our bodies. It can also  
3) ..... us. To use electricity safely, never touch anything electrical  
with 4) ..... hands

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة لصحيحة.

- Amira is an .....  
a) electrical    b) electrician    c) electricity    d) electric
- Amira knows how to work safely with  
a) electricity    b) electrical    c) electric    d) electrician
- In a storm we sometimes see a flash of  
a) light    b) thunder    c) lightning    d) electricity
- If we get an electric ..... , we can't control our bodies  
a) book    b) shock    c) lock    d) shake





## Lesson (2 / B)

5. Never touch anything electrical with \_\_\_\_\_ hands.  
a) dry      b) cut      c) clean      d) wet
6. Only use \_\_\_\_\_ into a socket.  
a) storm      b) plugs      c) lightning      d) pens

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ نصاً وحل المسائل.

Electricity is very dangerous. If we get an electric shock, we can't control our bodies. it can also burn us. In a storm we sometimes see a flash of lightning. There is a huge amount of energy in an electrical storm.

### A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Electricity is \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) dangerous      b) safe      c) useless      d) unimportant
2. The underlined pronoun 'it' refers to \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) sky      b) electricity      c) water      d) ground

### B) Answer the following questions.

3. What happens if we get an electric shock?
4. Why is electricity dangerous?

### 5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

كتب فقرة بثمانية عشر (18) كلمة عن:

Electricity

Guiding words:

( dangerous - control - storm )

# THREE COUSINS

## Vocabulary

Listen and repeat.

مع وردد



blocks

مكعبات



tape measure

شريط القياس



screwdriver

مفك البراغي



architect

مهندس معماري

## Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

curious

محب للاطلاع / فضولي

still

ما زال patient

مزال

adult

بالغ / راشد

safety

أمان top

أعلى - قمة

experiment

ي تجرب - تجربة

radio

جهاز راديو

cell phone

هاتف محمول

## Conjugation of verbs

تصرف الأفعال

Present

Past

Present

Past

explain

يشرح

explained

learn

يتعلم

learned / learnt

carry

يحمل

carried

put

يضع

put

work

يعمل

worked

make

يصنع

made

## Important expressions and prepositions

لتعابير وحروف جر هامة

get angry at

يغضب من

all the time

طوال الوقت

call each other

يتصل بعضهم ببعض

English class

حصة لغة إنجليزية

helping people

مساعدة الناس

when I'm older

عندما أكبر

### Lesson (3)

Look, listen and read.

انظر، واستمع واقرأ.

#### Three cousins

Lara, Talia, and Amir are cousins, but they are all very different.

When Lara was a child, she loved to experiment. She was very curious. She always carried a screwdriver and she opened old radios, cell phones, and anything that had electricity. Her favorite question was *How does it work?* She learned about safety with electricity.

عندما كانت تاليا طفلة رشيقة، كانت تلعب بالعكرات. كانت تضع مكعبات فوق الآخر. وعندما كبرت في لسن بدأت في صنع الأشياء. لقد صنعت منزلًا صغيرًا لكلبها وسريرًا للدمية أختها. وكانت تحمل دفة شريط قياس وقيم رصاص.

When Talia was a baby, she played with blocks.

She put one block on top of another.

When she was older, she started making things.

She made a little house for her dog and a bed for her sister's doll. She always carried a tape measure and a pencil.

عندما كانت تاليا طفلة رشيقة، كانت تلعب بالعكرات. كانت تضع مكعبات فوق الآخر. وعندما كبرت في لسن بدأت في صنع الأشياء. لقد صنعت منزلًا صغيرًا لكلبها وسريرًا للدمية أختها. وكانت تحمل دفة شريط قياس وقيم رصاص.

Amir was always very patient and he liked helping people.

Sometimes big brothers can get angry at their little brothers, but Amir was never angry.

He played, he helped, and he explained things all the time.

Today, Lara, Talia, and Amir are all adults but they still call each other when they need some help.

كان أمير دائمًا صبورًا جدًا، وأحب مساعدة الناس في بعض الأحيان، بنصب الأخوة الكبار من إخوانهم الصغار ولكن أمير لم يقضب أبدًا، كان يلعب ويساعد ويشرح الأشياء طوال الوقت. واليوم، لارا وتاليا وأمير جميعهم بالغون ولكنهم لا يزالون يتصلون ببعضهم البعض عندما يحتاجون إلى بعض المساعدة.

## Pronunciation

## Syllables المقاطع الصوتية

A **syllable** is a part of a word that contains a single vowel sound.  
المقطع الصوتي هو جزء من كلمة ويحتوي على صوت متحرك واحد.

## Two-syllable words كلمات ذات مقطعين

teach

er



plumb

er



معلمة

سباك

driv

er



den

tist



سائق

طبيب أسنان

doc

tor



طبيب

## Three-syllable words كلمات ذات ثلاث مقاطع

me

chan

ic



ميكانيكي

ar

chi

tect



مهندس معماري

col

lec

tor



جامع القمامة



## Lesson (3)

### Four-syllable words

كلمات ذات أربع مقاطع



lec

tri

tycian



كهربائي

### Word stress

الشدّة (الضغط على مقطع)

**Word stress** is the emphasis that you put on a part of a word when you say it.

الشدّة هي الضغط على صوت في جزء من الكلمة عند نطقها.

لاحظ أن الجزء الملون هو الجزء المشدّد.

dentist → dentist

plumber → plumber

teacher → teacher

collector → collector

driver → driver

doctor → doctor

mechanic → mechanic

### Note:

The first syllable of the two-syllable nouns is usually stressed.

المقطع الأول من الأسماء ذات المقطعين عادة يكون مشدّدًا.



**Listen and circle the words which have the correct stress.**

استمع وحوّل الكلمات ذات المقطعين المشدّد الصحيح (حسب الجزء الرن).

- |              |           |             |          |
|--------------|-----------|-------------|----------|
| 1. plumber   | plumber   | 4. mechanic | mechanic |
| 2. teacher   | teacher   | 5. driver   | driver   |
| 3. collector | collector | 6. doctor   | doctor   |

# Math : Division القسمة

**Division is separating something into equal groups.**

القسمة هي عملية تقسيم شيء إلى مجموعات متساوية.

The symbol of division is  $(\div)$ .

رمز القسمة هو  $(\div)$ .

$$4 \div 2 = 2$$

4

2

2

$$9 \div 3 = 3$$

9

3

3

3

**Note:**

$$100 \div 50 = 2$$

نقرأ هكذا

One hundred divided by fifty is two.

**Complete:**

$$40 \div 2 = 20 \quad 100 \div 25 = \dots \quad 100 \div 50 = 2 \quad 100 \div \dots = 5$$

$$40 \div 20 = 2 \quad 100 \div \dots = 25 \quad 100 \div 2 = 50 \quad 100 \div 5 = \dots$$

**Note this problem:**

There are two hundred children in Grade 4. Today they are going on a school trip. Each school bus carries 50 children.



How many buses do they need? The answer  $200 \div 50 = 4$

A mathematician عالم الرياضيات works with numbers and math problems.

عالم الرياضيات يتعامل مع الأرقام والمسائل الحسابية.



## Activities

### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

الاستماع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Lara loved to .....  
a) experiment   b) play   c) sing   d) swim
2. She wasn't .....  
a) active   b) lazy   c) happy   d) hungry
3. She always carried a .....  
a) pen   b) book   c) bag   d) screwdriver
4. She opened old ..... and cell phones.  
a) TVs   b) cameras   c) radios   d) computers

### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

radios - house - tape measure - blocks - making

When Talia was a baby, she played with 1) ..... When she was older, she started 2) ..... things. She made a little 3) ..... for her dog. She always carried a 4) ..... and a pencil.

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. We call a/an ..... when the fan doesn't work.  
a) doctor   b) architect   c) electrician   d) teacher
2. A/An ..... helps us design (يصمم) our houses.  
a) architect   b) teacher   c) electrician   d) vet
3. A/An ..... helps us understand something in the class.  
a) vet   b) architect   c) teacher   d) electrician
4. We use a ..... to open radios.  
a) screwdriver   b) pen   c) tape measure   d) block
5. The teachers are ..... They like helping children.  
a) bad   b) patient   c) angry   d) lazy

## Unit (5)

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

When Lara was a child, she loved to experiment. She was very curious. She always carried a screwdriver and she opened old radios, cell phones and anything that had electricity. Her favorite question was "How does it work?" She learned about safety with electricity. Lara wants to be an electrician when she grows up.

### A) Choose the correct answer.

- Lara learned about ..... with electricity.  
a) work      b) sports      c) safety      d) safely
- Lara wants to be an ..... when she grows up.  
a) actress      b) architect      c) engineer      d) electrician

### B) Answer the following questions.

- What did Lara love? .....
- What did Lara always carry? .....

### 5 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

- i want to be an architect

### 6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

My cousin Omar

Guiding words:

( blocks - bed - house - tape measure - architect )



# Lessons (4 & 5)

## WRITING PROJECT

### Vocabulary

### Listen and repeat.

استمع ورتد.

weather	طقس	report	تقرير
good points	نقاط جيدة	bad points	نقاط سيئة
bring	يحضر - يجلب	mail bag	حقيبة البريد
everybody	كل شخص (الجميع)	outside	بالخارج
exercise	تمرين	great	عظيم
easy	سهل	connect	يتصل / يقوم بتوصيل
pros (good things)	إيجابيات (مزايا)	garbage	قمامة
cons (bad things)	سلبيات (عيوب)	cleaners	عمال نظافة

### Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

On the one hand	من ناحية
On the other hand	من ناحية أخرى
get a lot of exercise	يتدرب كثيرًا
get a mail	يتلقى (رسالة بريد)
start work	يبدأ عمل
wake up early	يستيقظ مبكرًا
speak to	يتحدث إلى
so that	لكي
think about	يفكر في
all day	طوال اليوم
keep it clean	يحافظ عليه نظيف

## Look and read.

A mail carrier's job

My name is Sherifa. In class this week, we're talking about the good and bad things about different jobs. My aunt is a mail carrier in America. I talked to her about her job and she told me some of the pros and cons.



اسمي شريفة. في الفصل هذا الأسبوع نتحدث عن الأشياء الجيدة وسببها بعض الوظائف المختلفة. نعمل عملي ساعي بريد في أمريكا. لقد تحدثت إليها بخصوص وظيفتها وأخبرتني بعض الأشياء ونسبها

## Pros and cons of being a mail carrier.

What's it like to be a mail carrier?

There are some good and bad points about the job.

On the one hand, mail carriers are outside all day.

This is great when the weather is good, but it's not fun when the weather is very hot or cold. Mail carriers walk all day and get a lot of exercise. Everybody likes getting mail, so everyone likes meeting the mail carrier.



إيجابيات وسلبيات كونك ساعي بريد.

كيف يبدو الأمر عندما تكون ساعي بريد؟

هناك بعض النقاط الإيجابية والسلبية لهذه الوظيفة من ناحية، تتواجد ساعي البريد دائما في الهواء الطلق، هذا رائع إذا كان الطقس جيدا ولكنه ليس ممتعا عندما يكون الطقس حارا جدا أو باردا جدا، يسير ساعي البريد طوال اليوم، هذا يعني أنهم يحصلون على الكثير من التمارين. يرغب الجميع في رؤية ساعي البريد لذلك يحب الجميع لقاء ساعي البريد.

On the other hand, there are also some bad things to think about. Being a mail carrier is not an easy job. The mail bag is very heavy. Another bad thing is that they wake up very early. My aunt starts work at 6 o'clock in the morning.

على الجانب الآخر، يوجد بعض السلبيات التي يجب أخذها في الاعتبار. ليس من السهل العمل كساعي بريد! حقبة التمرين ثقيلة جدا. وشيء سيء آخر أنهم يستيقظون مبكرا جدا. تبدأ عملي العمل لساعة 6 صباحا.

## Lessons (4 & 5)

### Pros (good things)

إيجابيات



### Cons (bad things)

سلبيات



- Mail carriers get a lot of exercise.
- They speak to a lot of people.
- Everyone likes meeting the mail carrier.
- It's a great job when the weather is good.
- It's not easy.
- They wake up very early.
- They are outside all day.
- The mail bag is very heavy.

## Project

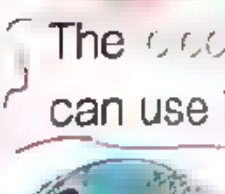
### Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.

### Workers who made our school



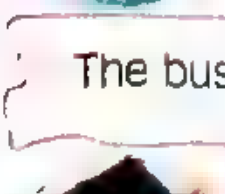
The **plumbers** connect the pipes so that we have water.



The **electricians** connect electricity so that we can use lights (أضواء).



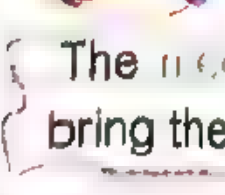
The **cleaners** keep the school clean.



The **bus drivers** bring the children to school.



The **garbage collectors** take away our garbage.



The **mechanics** fix the cars and buses that bring the children to school.







# Activities

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- There are some good and bad about being a mail carrier.  
a) points      b) jobs      c) dots      d) sums
- On the one hand, mail carriers are all day.  
a) indoor      b) inside      c) outside      d) off
- This is great when the weather is.  
a) cold      b) hot      c) bad      d) good
- Mail carriers all day and get a lot of exercise.  
a) play      b) walk      c) run      d) sleep

## 2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

mail bag - exercise - outside - tired

Being a mail carrier is not an easy job. Mail carriers are

- 1) ..... all day. This is great when the weather is good, but it's not fun when the weather is very hot or cold. They walk all the day and get a lot of 2) ..... Also the 3) ..... is very heavy. They are very 4) ..... when they come back home.

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- The bag is always heavy.  
a) meal      b) mail      c) mull      d) male
- Mail carriers wake up very.  
a) late      b) happy      c) early      d) light
- The connects electricity so that we can use lights.  
a) electrician      b) builder      c) mechanic      d) vet
- The keep the school clean.  
a) drivers      b) builders      c) cleaners      d) mechanics
- bring the children to school.  
a) Planes      b) Canoes      c) Scooters      d) Buses



## Lessons (4 & 5)

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص واجيب عن الأسئلة.

There are many workers who work at school. The plumbers connect the pipes so that we have water. The electricians connect electricity so that we can use lights. The cleaners keep the school clean. The bus drivers bring the children to school. The garbage collectors take away our garbage. The mechanics fix the cars and buses that bring the children to school.

#### A) Choose the correct answer.

- The mechanics ..... the cars and buses.  
a) play                      b) keep                      c) collect                      d) fix
- The ..... take away our garbage.  
a) garbage collectors      b) mechanics      c) cleaners      d) doctors

#### B) Answer the following questions.

- What do the electricians do?
- What do the cleaners do?

### 5 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي

what's it like to be a mail carrier

### 6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة متشابهة من (18) كلمة عن:

Pros and cons of being a teacher

Guiding words:

( Dad - works - class - teaches - patient )

help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - First Term (18)



# Review on Unit (5)

## Jobs



bus driver



electrician



lightning



plug



socket



mail carrier



mechanic



plumber



screwdriver



tape measure



garbage collector



blocks

## Where do you work?

### Syllables

Two Syllables

plumber

Four Syllables

electrician

Three Syllables

architect  
doctor

Stress

dentist  
driver

This is the socket the electrician is fixing.

These are the plumber's tools.

That's the mail carrier's bag.

Those are the bus drivers.



## Writing Corner



Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

### *Electricity*

Electricity is very dangerous. If we get an electric shock, we can't control our bodies. It can also burn us. We can use electricity safely. We mustn't touch anything electrical with wet hands. We mustn't put anything into a socket, only use plugs.

### *Pros and cons of being a garbage collector*

The garbage collector is a difficult job. On the one hand, he cleans our streets. On the other hand, he gets wet when it rains. He is happy because he helps to clean the city.

### *Workers who made our school*

The plumbers connect the pipes. The electricians connect electricity. The mechanics fix the cars and buses. The cleaners keep the school clean. The garbage collectors take away our garbage.

# Dictation on Unit (5)

## Lesson (1)

سائق أتوبيس

عامل نظافة

ميكانيكي

يوصل / يسلم

صنبور مياه

ينقط

بلح

في كهربائي

باني البريد

يك

يسير

معب

## Lesson (2)

وميض

عاصفة

مبلل

جاف

البرق

طريقة آمنة

كهربائي

نفس كهربائي

لينة / قابس

جرق

ظير

سعة كهربية

برقة

كهرباء

## Lesson (3)

مكعبات

صبور

هاتف محمول

جهاز الراديو

يشح

نفس معماري

ك البراق

شريط القياس

لغة

معب للإطلاع

## Lessons (4 & 5)

طقس

مميزات

يحضر / يجلب

قمامة

سهل

تغير

توب

عبية البريد

أخرج

ينقط





# Activities on Unit (5)

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اسمعه وصيّر، ثمّ جردّ الإجابة الصحيحة

- The ..... connect the pipes so that we have water.  
a) plumbers    b) teachers    c) vets    d) mechanics
- The electricians ..... the electricity.  
a) work    b) connect    c) play    d) take
- The cleaners keep the school .....  
a) bad    b) dirty    c) clean    d) ugly
- The bus drivers ..... the children to school.  
a) connect    b) cut    c) bring    d) get

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

- A/An ..... fixes cars and buses.  
a) mechanic    b) plumber    c) electrician    d) builder
- A mail carrier ..... your letters.  
a) connects    b) fixes    c) wakes    d) delivers
- Ali always carries a screwdriver, he is a/an .....  
a) electrician    b) dentist    c) teacher    d) vet
- Don't touch the hot spoon. It can ..... you.  
a) burn    b) help    c) give    d) take

## 3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل بنص الكلمات من المربع

dry - dangerous - shock - fire - wet

- Never touch anything electrical with 1) ..... hands. The electricity is very 2) ..... , You can get an electric 3) ..... or start a 4) .....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - First Term (16)

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

There are some good and bad points to be a mail carrier. On the one hand, mail carriers are outside all day. This is great when the weather is good, but it's not fun when the weather is very hot or cold. On the other hand, there are also some bad things to think about. Being a mail carrier is not an easy job. The mail bag is very heavy. Another bad thing is that they wake up early. They start work at 6 o'clock in the morning.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

- Mail carriers are ..... all day.  
a) indoors      b) outside      c) inside      d) indoor
- The mail bag is very .....  
a) beautiful      b) light      c) small      d) heavy

**B) Answer the following questions.**

- Summarize the text in one sentence.
- When do mail carriers start work?

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

- These ..... (mechanic) work in the repair shop.
- ..... (These) bus driver is taking me to school.
- That ..... (are) the water dripping from the faucet.
- ..... (That) children are watching TV.

**6 Punctuate the following.**

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

do you like being an electrician

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:**

اكتب فقرة: بثمانية من (18) كلمة عن:

A bus driver

Guiding words:

(bus driver - gets up - works - brings ,

# Al-Azhar Corner

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل الحوار بكلمات من الصندوق.

places - want - Why - bus driver

- Ahmed : Which job is the most interesting?  
 Hani : I think being a 1) .....  
 Ahmed : 2) ..... do you think so?  
 Hani : Because he drives to many different 3) .....  
 Ahmed : What do you want to be when you're older?  
 Hani : I 4) ..... to be a teacher.

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل الحوار بكلمات من الصندوق.

delivers - do - difficult - mail carrier

- Adam : What is your favorite job?  
 Malak : My favorite job is a 1) .....  
 Adam : What does a mail carrier 2) ..... ?  
 Malak : He 3) ..... the letters.  
 Adam : Is it 4) ..... ?  
 Malak : Yes, sometimes.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جمل صحيحة.

- 1 the - screwdriver - That's - electrician's - .
- 2 collector - away - takes - garbage - The garbage - the - .
- 3 fast - electricity - How - can - travel - ?
- 4 wants - to - All - be - an electrician - .

Help your child deal with such questions.

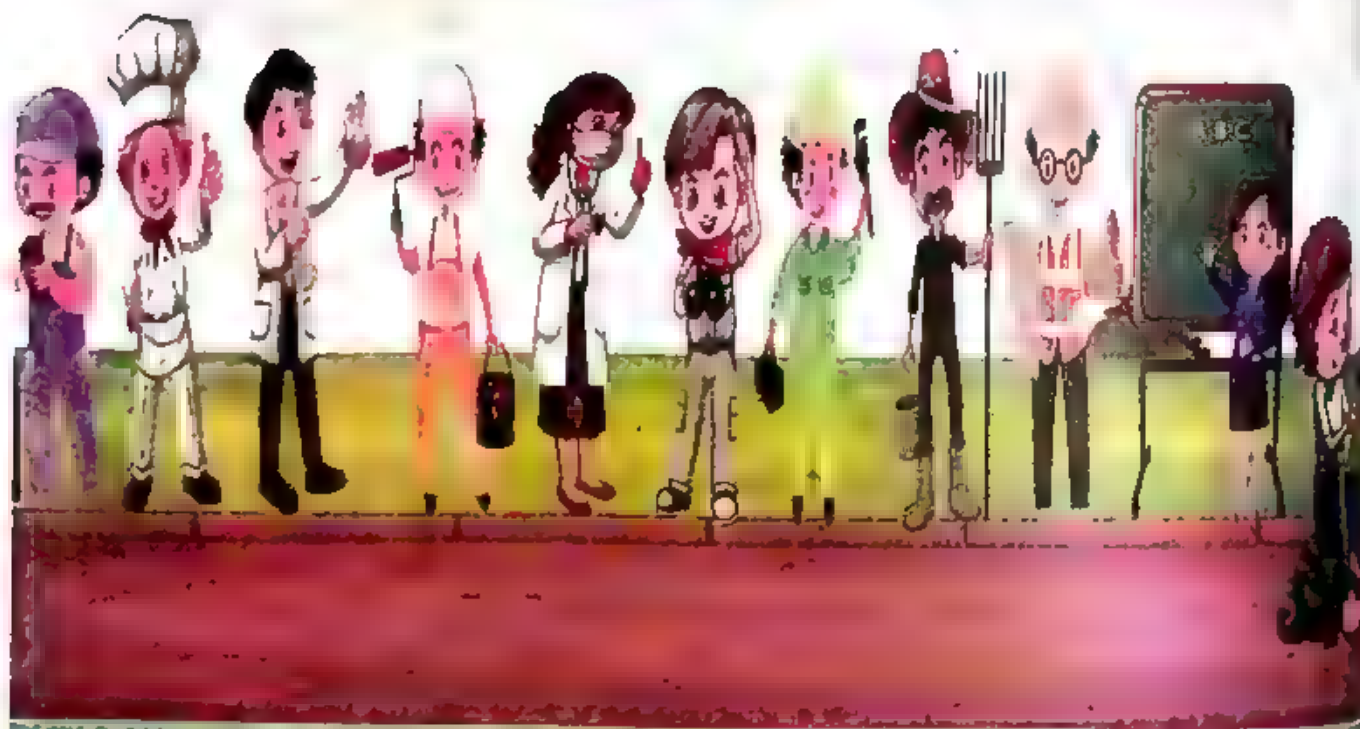
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

AL-BAHER - Connect (4) - First Term 171

# Unit

# What do you do?

ماذا تعمل؟



## In this unit the student will ...

- read and learn about more jobs
- explore what an industry is and the names of some common industries.
- know about prime numbers.
- distinguish and pronounce short vowel sounds.
- learn about words with the prefix dis-
- write about a job he/she wants to do.

في هذه الوحدة الطالب سوف .....

يرى ويعلم عن المزيد من الوظائف

يتعرف ما هي الصناعات وأسماء بعض الصناعات الشائعة.

يعلم عن الأعداد الأولية

الممسوحة صوتياً بـ CamScanner



# LESSON 1

## WHAT DO YOU DO?

### Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

farmer	مزارع / فلاح	farming
librarian	أمين مكتبة	education
guide	مرشد سياحي	tourism industry
fisherman	صياد سمك	fishing

ياحة

صوت

### Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

factory	مصنع	transportation
teacher	معلم	tourist
library	مكتبة	restaurant
history	التاريخ	market
information	معلومات	country

ل

### Conjugation of verbs

نصريف الافعال

#### Regular verbs

افعال منتظمة

#### Irregular verbs

فعل

Present	Past	Present	Past
pick	يقتطف / picked	catch	يختطف / caught
need	يحتاج / needed	tell	يخبر / told
explain	يشرح / explained	sell	يبيع / sold
work	يعمل / worked	grow	يزرع / grew

### Important expressions and prepositions

عبارات وصيغ جملية

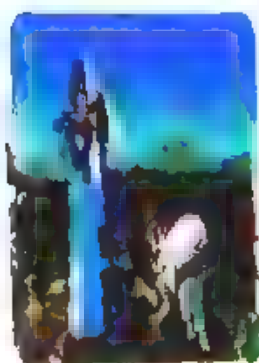
come back	يعود	catch fish	يصطاد الأسماك
look after	يعني بـ	go out on my boat	خرج بقاربي
all over the world	في جميع أنحاء العالم	a lot of	الكثير من
wake up	يستيقظ	pick the fruit	يقتطف الثمار

## Listen and read.

- 1) I'm a fisherman. I wake up very early every day, I go out on my boat and catch fish. Then in the afternoon, I come back and sell my fish in the market. My fish go to restaurants and homes all over the world.



من سمك استيقظ مبكرًا جدًا كل يوم، أخرج بقاري وأصطاد الأسماك. ثم بعد الظهر، أعود وأبيع الأسماك في سوق السمك. يذهب السمك إلى المطاعم والمنازل في جميع أنحاء العالم.



- 2) I'm a farmer. I grow oranges. All year, I look after the trees and I give them water and nutrients. Then, I pick the fruit. I send a lot of the fruit to the factory to make orange juice. I also sell some of my oranges to the supermarket.

مزارع - أعير يربط - صول لعدم، أعني بالأشجار وأعطيها الماء ولعلاء. ثم أقطف الفاكهة. أرسل الكثير من الفاكهة إلى مصنع عصير برتقال وأبيع أيضًا بعضًا من البرتقال الخاص بي إلى السوبر ماركت.

- 3) I'm a guide. I work in the tourism industry. People come to my country and it's my job to explain the history and tell the tourists lots of interesting information about the places they visit.



مرشد سياحة - يعمل في صناعة السياحة. يأتي الناس إلى بلدي، ووظيفتي أن أشرح التاريخ وأخبر السياح بالعديد من المعلومات.

- 4) I'm a librarian. I work in a school library. It's my job to look after all the books. I buy lots of new books and I help children find the information they need.



مكتبة - أعمل في مكتبة مدرسة. أعني بكل الكتب. أشتري الكثير من الكتب الجديدة وأساعد الأطفال في إيجاد المعلومات التي يحتاجونها.

# Lesson (1)

## Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ



What do they do?



A fisherman catches fish.

A farmer looks after trees and picks the fruit.



The guide works in the tourism industry.

The librarian looks after books.



### Tip

An **industry** is a business that produces a specific type of thing or gives a special kind of service.

الصناعة هي عمل يسج عنه نوعاً معيناً من الأشياء أو يقدم نوعاً خاصاً من الخدمة

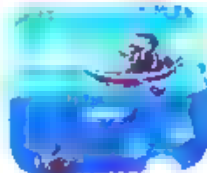
## Words connected to industry

farming



- animals
- trees

fishing



- boats
- nets

tourism



- hotels
- transportation

education



- teachers
- library



# Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

السمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

- 1 I'm a  
a) teacher      b) fisherman      c) farmer      d) tourist
- 2 I      up very early every day.  
a) wake      b) go      c) sleep      d) eat
- 3 I go out on my      and catch fish.  
a) taxi      b) car      c) bike      d) boat
- 4 I sell my fish in the  
a) shop      b) supermarket      c) market      d) mall

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

tourist - books - library - information - new

Sara is a librarian. She works in a school      . She  
looks after all the      books. She buys lots of  
3.      . She helps children  
find the      4.      they need.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

- 1 I go out on my boat and      fish.  
a) play      b) catch      c) pick      d) read
- 2 The farmer      the fruit.  
a) tricks      b) looks      c) picks      d) fixes
- 3 A      works in the tourism industry.  
a) farmer      b) teacher      c) doctor      d) guide
- 4 Ali is a      . He grows fruits and vegetables.  
a) guide      b) farmer      c) librarian      d) fisherman
- 5 I look after the books. I'm a  
a) tourist      b) doctor      c) farmer      d) librarian

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



## Lesson (1)

Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة

There are many jobs that people do. A fisherman wakes up very early every day. He goes out on his boat and catches fish. Then in the afternoon, he comes back and sells his fish in the market. A farmer grows oranges. All year, he looks after the trees and he gives them water. Then, he picks the fruit. He sends a lot of the fruit to the factory to make orange juice

Choose the correct answer.

1. The underlined pronoun "He" refers to the  
a) farmer      b) fisherman      c) teacher      d) tourist
2. The ... looks after the trees  
a) librarian      b) teacher      c) farmer      d) fisherman

Answer the following questions.

3. What does the farmer grow?
4. Why does the farmer send the fruit to the factory?

Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات ترقيم على ما يلي.

wake up very early every day

Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

A fisherman

Guiding words

( wake up - boat - sell market - restaurant )



## CLIL: SCIENCE

### Vocabulary

mango tree	الأشجار	children	الأطفال	seed	البذرة
money	المال	next to	جوار / بجانب	happy	سعيد
wood	الخشب	beautiful	جميل	window	نافذة
decision	مقرر	again	مرة أخرى	oil	زيت

### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs

Present	Past
play	played
look	looked
plant	planted
need	needed

#### Irregular verbs

Present	Past
say	said
grow	grew
give	gave
cut	cut

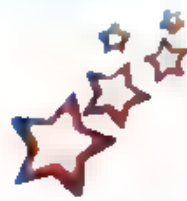
### Imp. phrases, expressions and prepositions

look	the window	no more wood	لا مزيد من الخشب
Don't worry		under the tree	تحت الشجرة
	a tree	grow bigger	يصبح أكبر
grow		run out	ينفذ

## Lesson (2)

Look and read.

نظروا واقرأوا



# Two mango trees

Sara and Malak are sisters. Each sister had a beautiful mango tree next to her house. Every year, the sisters ate beautiful mangoes. Their children played under the trees.

One day, Malak said, "I don't need mangoes. I need money. Let's cut down my tree. I can sell the wood." She cut the tree and she sold the wood. Malak was happy.

Next year, Sara's mango tree grew bigger and bigger. It gave Sara more mangoes.

Malak looked out of the window. There was no mango tree. She had no mangoes and no more wood.

"Don't worry," said Sara. "Plant this mango seed and it will grow into a big tree."



• Read and write T (True) or F (False)

1. Sara and Malak are friends.

2. Every sister had a beautiful mango tree.

Help your child read the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ القصة

# Energy sources

مصادر الطاقة

## Renewable Sources.

مصادر متجددة

can grow again or never run out.

يمكن أن تتجدد ثانية ولا تنفذ أبداً

wind energy

طاقة الرياح



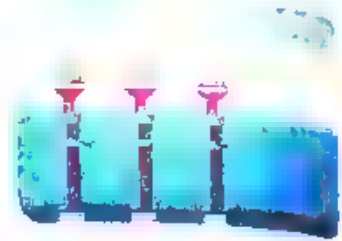
solar energy

الطاقة الشمسية



wave energy

طاقة الأمواج



## Non-renewable Sources

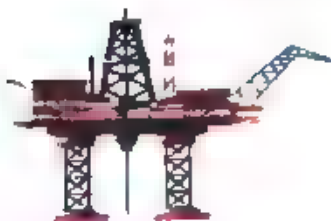
مصادر غير متجددة

can't grow and run out.

لا يمكن أن تتجدد وتنفذ.

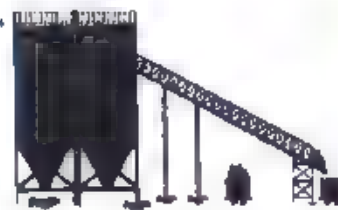
oil

البنترول/ النفط



coal

المحم



gas

غاز







# Activities

**Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

اسمع وصحح - برقة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Aya needed  
a) money      b) honey      c) gold      d) food
2. She  
a) looked after      b) cut down      c) got      d) watered  
her mango tree
3. She sold the  
a) food      b) water      c) wood      d) juice
4. She was  
a) sad      b) lazy      c) happy      d) fast

**Read and complete the text with words from the box.**

قرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

money - honey - mangoes - wood - tree

Sara and Malak are two sisters. Each sister had a beautiful mango tree. Every year, the sisters ate mangoes. One day, Malak said, "I don't need mangoes. I need money to buy things. Let's cut down my tree. I can sell the wood."

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ is a renewable energy  
a) Oil      b) Gas      c) Solar energy      d) Coal
2. Malak cut \_\_\_\_\_ her mango tree  
a) on      b) at      c) down      d) in
3. Let's sell the mangoes. I need \_\_\_\_\_  
a) wool      b) soil      c) money      d) seeds
4. We can take \_\_\_\_\_ from trees.  
a) milk      b) wood      c) fur      d) eggs

## Unit (6)

1 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Renewable energy is the energy that can grow again or never runs out. Wind, water and the sun are all sources of renewable energy. They don't cause pollution. They are safe to use. But non-renewable sources like coal, oil and gas cause pollution. They are not safe.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 The \_\_\_\_\_ is a source of renewable energy.  
a) sun                      b) oil                      c) gas                      d) coal
- 2 Non-renewable energy causes  
a) water                      b) tourism                      c) industry                      d) pollution

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 What is renewable energy?
- 4 Give examples for non-renewable energy.

5 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات ترقيم على ما يلي

- how can we use renewable sources

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

المسافرة المشقة من (18) كلمة عن

(Energy sources)

Guiding words

, renewable    wind - solar - oil    coal    non-renewable ,

## Lesson (3)

# FRESH FISH VAN

### Vocabulary

fisherman	صائد سمك	hot
old	قديم / عتيق	surprised
sound	صوت	engine
village	قرية	problem
lovely	محبوب / جميل	disappointed
fish van	شاحنة بيع الأسماك	fresh

### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs

Present	Past
fix	يُصَحَّح fixed
change	يُغَيَّر changed
shout	يُصْرَخ shouted
want	يُرِيد wanted

#### Irregular verbs

Present	Past
drive	—
give	—
teach	— taught
hear	— heard

### Important expressions and prepositions

around the village	حول قرية	want to help
lovely fresh fish	أسماك طازجة جميلة	fun
in front of	مام	all about
come and get	تعال واحصل على	start his van
It's a very simple problem.		

## Look and read.

## Fresh fish van

There's an old fisherman in my village.  
He drives around the village in an old van.  
He likes his job. He has fun. He shouts, 'Fish! Fresh fish! Come  
and get your lovely fresh fish'



يوجد صياد عجوز في قريتي يسير بشاحنته الخشبية في غربه وحب عمله واستمتع

ويصبح مادنياً، السمك سمك طازج! عن وحسن نيت سمك طازج جميل "

One day, he was in front of my house.  
He couldn't start his van. He was sad  
and disappointed.



My mom saw the man. It was hot in the sun.  
She wanted to help. Mom's dad (my grandpa) was a mechanic. He  
taught her all about cars. She looked at the old van's engine. "It is  
a very simple problem. I can fix it," said Mom.

في يوم ما كان الجو حاراً ولم يستطع تشغيل شاحنته. كان حزيناً ومحبباً. رأت أمي الشاحنة في شمس

أرادت المساعدة. كان والد أمي (جدّي) ميكانيكاً وعلمها كل شيء عن السيارات. رأت أمي محرك الشاحنة القديمة

وقالت: "إنها مشكلة بسيطة للغاية. أستطيع إصلاحها."

The old fisherman was surprised. Then, we heard the sound of  
the engine. His van was fixed! "Thank you," the fisherman said.  
He gave Mom ten fresh fish.

كان الصياد العجوز متفاجئاً. ثم سمعنا صوت المحرك. كانت شاحنته مصلوحة! "شكراً لك"، أعطاني أمي عشرة  
سمك طازج.

- Read and write T (True) or F (False)

1. The old fisherman's van is old. ( )

2. It was cold that day. ( )



Lesson (3)

# Pronunciation

## Short Vowel Sound

æ



van



dæd



sad

e



ten



pen



fresh

i



fish



pin



fix

ʌ



sun



apple



fun

## Unit (6)

اقرأ واكمل

Read and complete.

(man - ten - fish - cut - van - pin - sun - get - can - help - run - fit)



i

æ/

sad



e

/e/

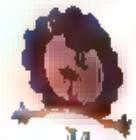
fresh



i

/i/

fix



u

/u/

fun

Look and read

انظر واقرأ

You can have fun in the sun.



There's a man in a van.

He sells fresh fish from the window.



There are ten men standing on one leg.

## Lesson (3)

### Prefix (dis-)

We use the prefix (dis-) at the beginning of a word to give the opposite meaning.

استخدم بادئة (dis-) في بداية كلمة تعطي عكس الكلمة

dis = not

Word		Opposite	
agree	يسمو / يوافق	disagree	يرفض / يمتنع
appear	يظهر	disappear	يختفي
like	يحب	dislike	يكره
obey	يطيع	disobey	يعصي

Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.



She **dislikes** ice cream



These friends **disagree**.



The boy is **disappointed**.  
He didn't pass the test.



I'm sorry because I  
**disobeyed** my mom.



The rabbit **disappeared**  
from the hat.

# CLIL : MATH



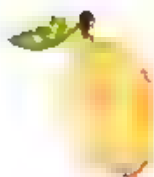
## Prime Numbers

الأعداد الأولية

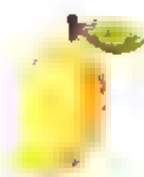
A Prime Number

is a number you can divide only by itself and 1  
هو عدد يقبل القسمة على نفسه وعلى رقم (1) فقط

2



1



1

$$\begin{aligned} 1 \times 2 &= 2 \\ 2 \div 2 &= 1 \\ 2 \div 1 &= 2 \end{aligned}$$

3



1



1



1

$$\begin{aligned} 1 \times 3 &= 3 \\ 3 \div 3 &= 1 \\ 3 \div 1 &= 3 \end{aligned}$$

The smallest  
prime numbers are

( 2,3,5,7,11,13,17,19,23,29,31,37,41,43,47,53,61,67,  
71,73,79,83,89,97 )

**Note**

Number ( 1 ) isn't a prime number because it can only be  
divided by one number which is itself.

العدد (1) لا





# Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The fisherman's ..... stopped in front of my house.  
a) car                      b) train                      c) plane                      d) bike
2. He was very .....  
a) happy                      b) sad                      c) funny                      d) hungry
3. My ..... was a mechanic.  
a) sister                      b) mother                      c) brother                      d) grandfather
4. My father ..... the car.  
a) stopped                      b) thanked                      c) fixed                      d) taught

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. A ..... sells fresh fish.  
a) builder                      b) fisherman                      c) doctor                      d) vet
2. He drives an old .....  
a) horse                      b) camel                      c) bike                      d) van
3. He likes his job. He has .....  
a) fan                      b) van                      c) fun                      d) gun
4. It's very hot under the .....  
a) sun                      b) fun                      c) fan                      d) bun
5. She ..... fish. She never eats it.  
a) likes                      b) enjoys                      c) loves                      d) dislikes
6. I can't see my cat. It .....  
a) disagreed                      b) disliked                      c) disappeared                      d) disobeyed
7. He didn't pass the test. He's .....  
a) funny                      b) happy                      c) disappointed                      d) excited
8. .... is a prime number.  
a) 6                      b) 14                      c) 12                      d) 17

9. I'm sorry because I ..... my dad  
 a) obeyed      b) liked      c) disobeyed      d) disliked
10. I always ..... with my brother. We're different.  
 a) disappear      b) disagree      c) disobey      d) dislike

**3 Read the text and answer the questions.** اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

There's an old fisherman in my village. He drives around the village in an old van. He likes his job. He has fun. He shouts, "Fish! Fresh fish! Come and get your lovely fresh fish." One day, he was in front of my house. He couldn't start his van. He was sad and disappointed. My mom saw the man. It was not in the sun. She wanted to help. Mom's dad (my grandpa) was a mechanic. He taught her all about cars. She looked at the old van engine. "It is a very simple problem. I can fix it," said Mom. The old fisherman was surprised. Then, we heard the sound of the engine. His van was fixed! "Thank you," the fisherman said. He gave Mom ten fresh fish.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. The fisherman drives a  
 a) car      b) taxi      c) van      d) bus
2. .... fixed the van engine.  
 a) The fisherman      b) Mom      c) Grandpa      d) Dad

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. What does the underlined pronoun "He" refer to?
4. How many fish did the old man give Mom?

**4 Punctuate the following.**

a fisherman sells fresh fish

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

# Lessons (4 & 5)

## WRITING PROJECT

### Vocabulary

respect	احترام / احترام	exciting	مثير
carefully	بحرص / باهتمام	different	مختلف
patient	صبور	best	أفضل
trash	قمامة	surprising	مفاجئ / مذهش
questions	سئلة	shelf	رف

### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs

Present	Past
ask يسأل	asked
learn يتعلم	learned
encourage يحض	encouraged
change يغير	changed

#### Irregular verbs

Present	Past
give يعطي	gave
throw يلقى / يرمي	threw
show ص	showed
teach علم	taught

### Important expressions and prepositions

get off the bus	نزل من الأوبس	say thank you	يقول شك
show respect to	أب احترام	think quickly	يفكر بسرعة
work for many hours	يعمل ساعات عديدة	ready to learn	مستعد يتعلم
for me	منى	It's hard work	ه عمل صق
It's exciting	ه شى مثير		

### Definitions

respect	when you are polite and kind.	احترام ، حرام
patient	someone who doesn't get angry easily.	تسوا

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

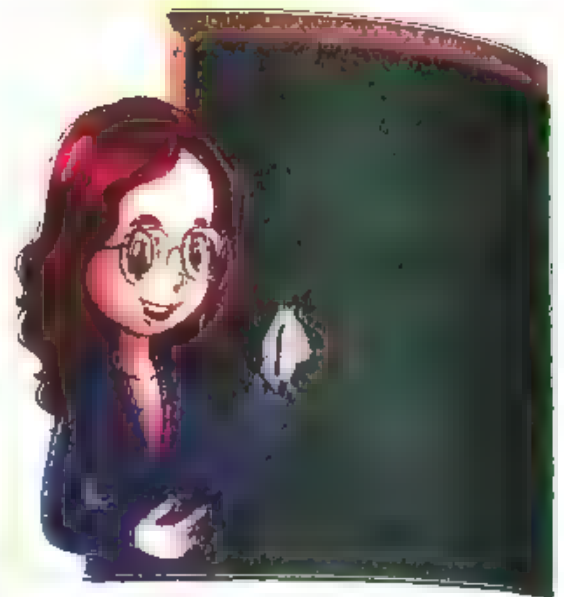
Listen and read



**What are the good and bad things about being a teacher?**

When people ask me, "What do you want to do?" I answer: "I want to be a teacher. For me, it's the best job in the world."

عندما يسألني الناس، «ما تودعته انى تريد ان تكون؟»  
 «أريد ان أصبح مدرّساً لأنّى أحبّه». هذا هو أفضل عمل في  
 الدنيا.



For a teacher, every day is different. Students always ask surprising questions. A teacher can change their students' lives so teachers need to be very patient. They work for many hours every day. It's hard work, but it's exciting.

كل يوم مختلف للمدرّس. الطلاب دائماً يسألون أسئلة مدهشة. يمكن للمدرّس تغيير حياة طلابه، لذلك يحتاج المعلمون إلى أن يكونوا صبورين. فهم يعملون لساعات عديدة كل يوم. إنه عمل شاق، لكنه مثير.

Teachers need to think quickly. They need to encourage their students. A good teacher is always ready to learn. Teachers teach their students, but students also teach their teachers. Everyone in the class knows different things.

المعلم يحتاج إلى التفكير بسرعة. هم بحاجة لتشجيع طلابهم. المعلم الجيد دائماً مستعد للتعلم. المعلمون يعلمون طلابهم، لكن الطلاب أيضاً يتعلمون منهم. كل فرد في الفصل يعرف أشياء مختلفة.



## Lessons (4 & 5)

### Ask and answer.

اسأل وأجب

What do you want to be?

ماذا تريد أن تكون؟

I want to be an electrician.

أريد أن أكون فني كهرباء.

Why do you want to be an electrician?

لماذا تريد أن تكون فني كهرباء؟

Because I want to fix things. I like helping people and I think electricity is interesting, but it can be dangerous!

لاني أريد أن أصبح الأشياء. أحب مساعدة الناس واعتقد ان الكهرباء شائعة ولكنها قد تكون خطيرة



## Showing respect

إظهار الاحترام

I respect the cleaner.  
I don't throw trash.

أحترم عامل النظافة  
(على الأرض)



I respect the teacher.  
I listen to him carefully.

أحترم المعلم أستمع إليه بعناية

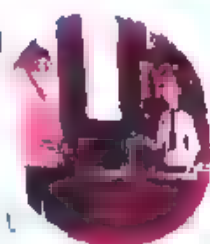


## How to show respect.

كيف نظهر الاحترام

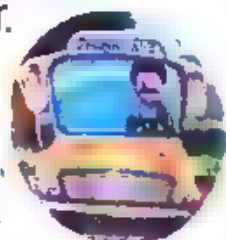
I respect the librarian.  
I put my books back on the shelf

أحترم أمين المكتبة أضع كتابي مرة أخرى على الرف



I respect the bus driver.  
I say thank you when I get off the bus.

أحترم سائق الحافلة. أقول له شكراً عندما أنزل من الحافلة





# Activities

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Being a teacher is not  
a) easy      b) difficult      c) quickly      d) surprising
2. For a teacher, every day is  
a) the same      b) good      c) nice      d) different
3. Teachers always ask surprising questions.  
a) Friends      b) Students      c) Babies      d) Patients
4. Teachers need to think quickly.  
a) play      b) write      c) think      d) read

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Students ask surprising  
a) answers      b) lives      c) questions      d) jobs
2. The teachers always encourage their students  
a) think      b) learn      c) encourage      d) work
3. We should show respect to our teachers.  
a) show      b) read      c) listen      d) thank
4. I think teaching is the best job in the world.  
a) teaching      b) electricity      c) farm      d) respect

**3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.**

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

teacher - encourage - quickly - questions

For a teacher, every day is different. Students always ask surprising 1) . Teachers need to think . They need to their students. They need to be very patient. can change their students' lives.

Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص و اجب عن الأسئلة.

I want to be a teacher because I think teaching is the best job in the world. Teaching is exciting because every day is different for teachers. Students ask surprising questions. Teachers can change the students' lives. They encourage their students to do better. They work hard for long hours. They need to be patient

1) Choose the correct answer.

1 The text is about

- a) farming      b) teaching      c) sports      d) food

2 Teachers \_\_\_\_\_ their students to do better.

- a) thank      b) answer      c) encourage      d) work

3) Answer the following questions.

3. Why is teaching exciting?

4 What does the writer want to be?

Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي

- what do you want to do

Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

كتب فقره الشايعة من (18) - عن

Being an electrician

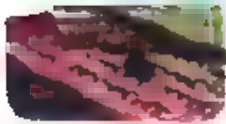
Guiding words

exciting    connect    screwdriver    dangerous



# Review on Unit (6)

## Industry



farming



fishing



education



tourism

## Non-renewable energy



coal



gas



oil

## Renewable energy



solar energy



wind energy



wave energy

## What do you do?

What do you do?

a  
/æ/



van



cat

e  
/e/



ten



pen

u  
/ʌ/



fish



pin



sun



run



Be.

I work in the fishing industry. I catch and sell fish



Prefixes: dis- disappear, disagree, dislike, disobey, disappointed

Math: Prime numbers

e.g. 2 3 5 etc.

2 - 2 - 1

2 1 - 2





# Writing Corner



Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

## *A fisherman*

I'm a fisherman. I wake up early every day. I go out on my boat and catch fish. Then in the afternoon, I come back and sell my fish in the market. My fish go to restaurants and homes all over the world.

## *A farmer*

I'm a farmer. I grow oranges. I look after the trees and give them water and nutrients. I pick the fruit. I send the fruit to the factory to make orange juice. I sell some oranges to the supermarket.

## *A teacher*

For a teacher every day is different. Students always ask surprising questions. Teachers need to think quickly. They need to encourage their students. They need to be very patient. It's hard work, but it's exciting.

# Dictation on Unit (6)

## Lesson (1)

مكتبة  
السياحة  
مُعلم  
فلاح  
أمين مكتبة  
الطاقة

زراعة  
صيد السمك  
التعليم  
صيد السمك  
شجرة  
مرشد

## Lesson (2)

الطاقة الشمسية  
البترو  
الغاز  
نافذة  
خشب  
بذرة  
جميل

طاقة الرياح  
طاقة الأمواج  
الفحم  
شجرة المانجو  
اطفال  
نفود  
جوار

## Lesson (3)

محرك  
شاحنة  
يصلح  
يخفي  
لا يحب / يكره

مخطط  
شمس  
سمكة  
غير موافق  
لا يطيع / يعصي

## Lessons (4 & 5)

يشجع  
يحترم  
قمامة  
رى  
مختلف

مدهش  
طلاب  
شعر  
صبور  
الفضل



# Activities on Unit (6)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

سنمّع وصبع د سره حور لاجنه لصحبه

1. Teachers need to think  
a) quickly      b) slowly      c) happily      d) sadly
2. They need to  
a) think      b) encourage      c) dislike      d) work
3. They need to be  
a) lazy      b) helpful      c) patient      d) brave
4.      is hard work.  
a) Sleeping      b) Running      c) Farming      d) Teaching

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

سر لاجنه

1. A      grows food.  
a) guide      b) farmer      c) tourist      d) scientist
2. Mechanics      cars.  
a) talk      b) fix      c) catch      d) grow
3. She      ice cream.  
a) disagrees      b) disappears      c) disobeys      d) dislikes
4. I want to be a/an      to fix things.  
a) fisherman      b) electrician      c) doctor      d) vet

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

sell - for - fruit - grow - after

- I am a farmer. I 1)      oranges. All year, I look
- 2)      trees and give them water and nutrients. Then I pick the
- 3)
- 4)      some of my crops to the supermarket

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

**Read the text and answer the questions.**

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة

Being a teacher is not easy. For a teacher, every day is different. Students always ask surprising questions. Teachers need to think quickly. They need to encourage their students. They need to be very patient. They work for many hours every day. Teachers can change their students' lives.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. The teacher's job is not  
a) good                      b) easy                      c) difficult                      d) hard
2. Teachers need to think  
a) sadly                      b) quickly                      c) slowly                      d) happily

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. What can a teacher change?
4. What is the main idea of the text?

**Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. What do you \_\_\_\_\_ (wants) to be?
2. The snake \_\_\_\_\_ (appeared), I can't see it.
3. Ali wants to \_\_\_\_\_ (is) a doctor.
4. The boy is \_\_\_\_\_ (appointed). He didn't pass the test.

**Punctuate the following.**

ضع علامات الترقيم على التالي

- i want to be an engineer

**Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:**

اكتب فقرة تتألف من (18) كلمة عن:

**A fisherman**

Guiding words

( fishing boat sea work hard catch



# Al-Azhar Corner

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل الحوار بالكلمات من المربع.

change - show - carefully - teacher

oha: What do you want to be?

lla: I want to be a 1)

oha: Why?

lla: Because a teacher can 2) students' lives.

loha: How do you 3) respect to teachers?

lla: I listen 4) to them.

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع.

market - get up - fisherman - When

Adam: What do you do?

Hoda: I'm a 1)

Adam: 2) do you get up?

Hoda: 3) very early every day.

Adam: Where do you sell the fish?

Hoda: I sell the fish in the 4)

Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. the - bus - I - respect - driver - ,

2. patient - is - teacher - very - My - ,

3. do - you - What - do - ?

4. down - cut - Let's - tree - my - ,



## Activities on Review (2)

### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

1. My aunt is a ..... in America.  
a) mail carrier    b) vet    c) doctor    d) teacher
2. She works ..... all day.  
a) inside    b) outside    c) indoor    d) indoors
3. It's not funny when it is too cold or .....  
a) cool    b) warm    c) hot    d) nice
4. She sometimes carries heavy .....  
a) suitcase    b) backpacks    c) boxes    d) mail bags

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. The hospital is next ..... the school.  
a) for    b) to    c) of    d) off
2. The ..... brings you to school.  
a) bus driver    b) builder    c) doctor    d) electrician
3. He loves living on the water. So he lives on a .....  
a) plane    b) houseboat    c) tent    d) apartment
4. We sometimes see the flash of .....  
a) storm    b) lightning    c) plug    d) raining

### 3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع

dangerous - crocodile - job - animals

We sometimes think some 1) ..... are scary or ugly but they are all important. The 2) ..... is huge and scary. Spiders are also scary. Crocodiles and spiders are 3) ..... but they do a very important 4) .....

## Review (2)

### 3 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

I want to be a teacher. For me, the teacher's job is the best in the world. For a teacher, every day is different. Students always ask surprising questions. Teachers need to think quickly. They need to encourage their students. They need to be very patient. They work for many hours every day. It's hard work, but it's exciting. Teachers can change their student's lives. Teachers teach their students, but students also teach their teachers.

**Choose the correct answer.**

- The text is about the ..... job.  
a) doctor's      b) teacher's      c) vet's      d) engineer's
- Teachers need to be very .....  
a) sad      b) nervous      c) patient      d) unkind

### 4 Answer the following questions.

- What do students ask?
- Who can change the students' lives?

### 5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

(These) is my tape measure.

The school is ..... (on) front of the park.

My father bought ..... (these) mobile for me.

The rabbit ..... (appeared) from the hat. I can't see it.

### 6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

what do you want to be

### 7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة من (18) كلمة عن:

**A farmer**

Guiding words:

( farmer - grows - trees - picks - factory )

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



# General Activities

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

اسمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1 Rhim gazelle eat

- a) dates      b) fruits      c) leaves      d) cookies

Rhim gazelles have long

- a) teeth      b) hair      c) horns      d) arms

Rhim gazelles look very

- a) sad      b) ugly      c) bad      d) beautiful

Rhim gazelles'      protect them from the sun

- a) horns      b) hair      c) feet      d) coats

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

اختر لإجابة الصحيحة.

The      connects pipes and faucets to give us water

- a) mail carrier      b) mechanic      c) electrician      d) plumber

My friend is      because he didn't pass the final exam

- a) excited      b) disappointed      c) different      d) patient

3 "      " means someone who doesn't lie

- a) Honest      b) Emperor      c) Curious      d) Interesting

4 Farmers work in the      habitat

- a) desert      b) agricultural      c) lakes      d) rivers

**3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.**

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

early - surprised - range - knows - encourage

For a teacher every day is different. Students always ask

1)      questions. A teacher can 2)

their students' lives, so teachers need to be patient. Teachers need

to think      . Teachers teach their students, but students

to teach their teachers. Everyone in the class 4      different

things



## General Activities

Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

My name is Khaled. I live with my parents in Darnasa. We plant different seeds to make the farm green. We use a water pump to water the seeds. We grow many fruits like mangoes, oranges, and guavas. We raise farm animals like sheep, goats, cows, and chickens. Cows and goats give us meat and milk. We get fresh eggs from the chickens. The air isn't polluted. We breathe fresh air. Life is good in our farm.

Choose the correct answer.

Khaled lives with his

- a) mom and dad   b) cousins   c) grandparents   d) uncles

The underlined word "polluted" means

- a) healthy   b) good   c) unhealthy   d) fresh

Answer the following questions

What plants do we grow in our governorate?

What do we use to water the crops?

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

The crocodile is

longer than the snake.

These

are the electrician's tools.

What

do librarians look after?

The kitchen is

connected to the living room.

Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي

foxes and camels are desert animals

Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

My apartment

Adding elements:

How many rooms are there in your apartment?

What is your favorite room?

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

# Listening Texts

## Unit (1)

### Lesson (1)

#### 1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

I think we grow rice in Egypt. Egyptian farmers grow many vegetables like onions, tomatoes and potatoes. Egyptian farmers raise chickens to get eggs and meat. They keep cows to get milk.

### Lesson (2)

#### 1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

I'm in a wheelchair basketball team at school. We practice three times every week. I don't drink cola, but I want to drink more water. I don't play video games because I'm very busy. I play basketball in the park.

### Lessons (4 & 5)

#### 1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

I live in Minya. Minya is a governorate in Upper Egypt. Farmers can grow cotton, corn, wheat, dates and sugarcane in Minya. It is famous for "black honey". It is made from sugarcane. About six million people live in Minya.

### Activities on Unit (1)

#### 1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

My mom made special food for us. It looks delicious. Egyptian farmers produce many kinds of fruits and vegetables that we eat. My mom says we also grow rice in Egypt.

## Unit (2)

### Lesson (1)

#### 1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Some animals are scary but they are important. The spiders are very helpful to farmers. They eat insects. Snakes and crocodiles are dangerous, but they eat insects, birds and lizards. We sometimes think some animals are scary or ugly but they are all important.

### Lesson (2)

#### 1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Camels are amazing. Their milk is delicious. Camels are perfect for the desert. They can live without water for a long time.

### Lesson (3)

#### 1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

A pelican and a bear are in the river. They are very hungry. They are looking at a big, juicy fish. The bear reaches for the fish. It lifts its paw. The pelican opens its beak. It is ready to take the fish out of the water. The bear is stronger than the pelican.

### Lessons (4 & 5)

#### 1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North Africa. It's smaller than other foxes. Its ears are really big. The fennec fox needs big ears to hear insects and small animals. It eats insects, lizards and small mice.

### Activities on Unit (2)

#### 1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert, and they eat grass, leaves and plants. They have big ears and long horns.

## Unit (3)

### Lesson (1)

#### 1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Tomatoes are delicious and important. We use tomatoes in most of our food. Everyone can grow tomatoes on their balcony. Tomatoes have seeds inside.

### Lesson (2)

#### 1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

There are many habitats in Egypt. In agricultural habitats, farmers work and grow food for us to eat. In the desert habitat, there is no much rain here. Plants that live in the desert do not need a lot of water.

### Lesson (3)

#### 1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Lucas lives on a farm in the United States. Forty years ago, the land was very dry. Lucas's grandparents lived in the city, but they didn't like it. They wanted to have a farm. They decided to buy some land.

## Listening Texts

### Lessons (4 & 5)

**Listen and circle the correct answer.**

Papyrus is a very special plant. It is famous because Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper. They also made sandals and baskets from papyrus. Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm weather to grow quickly. It grows in the Nile Delta near the river.

### Activities on unit (3)

**Listen and circle the correct answer.**

Papyrus is a very special plant. It is famous because Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper. Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm weather to grow quickly.

### Review (1)

**Listen and circle the correct answer.**

Damietta is an Egyptian governorate. Its land is rich in nutrients. The farmers can grow many crops there such as rice and wheat. Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea. Goats, cows and sheep live in Damietta, too. Life is good in Damietta.

### Unit (4)

#### Lesson (1)

**Listen and circle the correct answer.**

My name is Hamza. I live in an apartment. My favorite room is the living room. I play games with my brother in the living room. I help my mother in the kitchen. I play football on Friday.

#### Lesson (3 / A)

**Listen and circle the correct answer.**

In Al-... I live in a small village. My school is next to the hospital. Behind the hospital, there's a park. I often play football in the park with my friends.

#### Lesson (3 / B)

**Listen and circle the correct answer.**

My friend Hany lives on a boat in the summer. His parents work on tourist boats, so he goes with them. They travel up and down the Nile. He likes the summer very much.

### Lessons (4 / 5)

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer.**

I'm Aya. I live in a beautiful house with a big garden. I like the beautiful houses and interesting bazaars in the Sahara Desert where lots of tourists go on safaris.

### Activities on unit (4)

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer.**

My sister works at a supermarket near our house. People buy food at the supermarket. She checks the food is fresh. She is very kind and happy.

### Unit (5)

#### Lesson (1)

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer.**

My name is Oia. My father is a plumber. He is good at fixing pipes and faucets. My brother is an electrician. He loves making things work.

#### Lesson (2)

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer.**

Amira is an electrician. She studied and practiced for three years before she became an electrician. She knows how to work safely with electricity. She says electricity is dangerous.

#### Lesson (3)

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer.**

When Lara was a child, she loved to experiment. She wasn't lazy. She always carried a screwdriver and she opened old radios and cell phones.

### Lessons (4 & 5)

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer.**

There are some good and bad points about being a mail carrier. On the one hand, mail carriers are outside all day. This is great when the weather is good, but it's not fun when the weather is very hot or cold. Mail carriers walk all day and get a lot of exercise.

### Activities on unit (5)

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer.**

The plumbers connect the pipes so that we have water. The electricians connect the electricity so that we can use lights. The cleaners keep the school clean. The bus drivers bring the children to school.



## Unit (6)

### Lesson (1)

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer.**  
I'm a fisherman. I wake up very early every day. I go out on my boat and catch fish. Then in the afternoon I sell my fish in the market.

### Lesson (2)

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer.**  
Aya needed money. She cut down her mango tree. She sold the wood. She was happy. Now, there is no mango tree and no more wood.

### Lesson (3)

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer.**  
The fisherman's car stopped in front of my house. He was very sad. My grandfather was a mechanic. He taught my father all about cars. My father fixed the car. The fisherman became happy and thanked my father. He gave my father ten fresh fish.

### Lessons (4 & 5)

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer.**  
Being a teacher is not easy. For a teacher, every day is different. Students always ask surprising questions. Teachers need to think quickly.

### Activities on unit (6)

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer.**  
Teachers need to think quickly. They need to encourage their students. They need to be patient. Teaching is hard work.

### Review (2)

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer.**  
My name is Hend. My aunt is a mail carrier in America. She says there are some cons for being a mail carrier. She works outside all day. It isn't funny when it is too cold or hot. She sometimes carries heavy mail bags.

### General Activities

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer.**  
Rhin gazelles are desert animals. They eat leaves. They have long horns. They look very beautiful. Their coats protect them from the sun.



AL-BAHER

# CONNECT

**Final Revision**

الصف الرابع الابتدائي

First Term



**4<sup>th</sup>**  
Primary



**2025**  
Parents Guide



# Language Focus

## Conjunctions

أدوات الربط

**and**

We use **and** to add two ideas together.

أستخدم (and) لربط فكرتين معاً



I eat vegetables, **and** I exercise.

**but** (لكن)

We use **but** to contrast two ideas.

أستخدم (but) لربط فكرتين متناقضتين.



I want to play football, **but** I hurt my leg.

**Look and read.**

انظروا اقرأوا.

I practice basketball on Wednesday,  
and I walk home from school every day.



I love playing video games, **but**  
I only play them on Saturday

② Final Revision

Help your child identify the conjunctions (and & but).  
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الروابط (and و but).



# Activities

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 The plants need water sunshine.  
a) so                      b) but                      c) and                      d) because
- 2 The kitchen was clean this morning, now  
I need to reclean it  
a) but                      b) so                      c) because                      d) and
- 3 Camels can carry people things across the desert.  
a) and                      b) because                      c) so                      d) but
- 4 Camels are perfect for desert, they are noisy.  
a) because                      b) and                      c) but                      d) so
- 5 We plant a seed the plant grows.  
a) but                      b) so                      c) and                      d) because
- 6 The crocodiles are huge scary.  
a) because                      b) but                      c) or                      d) and
- 7 Some animals are scary, they are important.  
a) so                      b) and                      c) because                      d) but
- 8 Toka loves ice cream chocolate.  
a) and                      b) but                      c) or                      d) because
- 9 My mom is Egyptian, my dad is English.  
a) and                      b) because                      c) so                      d) but
- 10 I can speak English, I can't speak French.  
a) so                      b) but                      c) and                      d) or
- 11 We wash vegetables fruit well.  
a) but                      b) and                      c) so                      d) because
- 12 Sara is Egyptian, Suzanne is British.  
a) and                      b) so                      c) but                      d) or
- 13 He doesn't eat fruit, he likes vegetables.  
a) so                      b) because                      c) and                      d) but
- 14 I drink cola, I want to drink more water.  
a) or                      b) and                      c) but                      d) so

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - First Term ③

15. My sister plays tennis

- a) but      b) so      c) and      d) because

Mom is a scientist      she likes looking at animals and plants.

- a) because      b) and      c) but      d) when

It's an interesting place,      it's very cold sometimes.

- a) because      b) which      c) and      d) but

She loves pizza,      she only eats one a week.

- a) and      b) because      c) but      d) or

Farmers keep chickens to get eggs      meat.

- a) but      b) or      c) and      d) because

He wants to play football,      he hurts his leg.

- a) but      b) and      c) so      d) where

**2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1 He's a plumber      (but) she is a teacher.

2 I studied hard,      and, I failed the exam.

3 We have an apartment      (but) a little house.

4 I can walk      ... (and) I can't fly.

5 I like running      ... (but) swimming.

6 I don't like cola,      (and) I like water.

7 It will be warm      (so), sunny on Monday.

8 Mona likes cake,      (because) she doesn't like ice cream.

9 I like reading      (but) my sister like reading too.

10 I like football,      (and) I don't like swimming

11 Aya bought a dress,      so Adam bought a new shirt.

**4 Final Revision**

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



## Language

# Comparative Adjectives

### Usage:

- We use comparative adjectives to compare two people or two things.

### Short adjectives

نصف من اثنين أو ثلاثة واحد

### Form:

adj. (صفة) + er + than

strong

stronger than

old

older than

e.g. A mouse is smaller than an elephant



### Spelling rules

- 1- Short adjectives ending in **e**, only add **r** to the adjective.

مع الحركات القصيرة المنتهية بـ (e)، نضيف فقط (r) للحرف.

nice

nicer than

e.g. The goat is **nicer** than the donkey.



## 2- Short adjectives ending in one vowel and one consonant, double the last consonant.

مع الصفات القصيرة المنتهية بحرف متحرك واحد ثم حرف ساكن واحد، نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير.

thin thinner than big bigger than

e.g. The snake is thinner than the crocodile.



## 3- Short adjectives ending in (a consonant + y), change the (y) into (i) and add (-er).

مع الصفات القصيرة المنتهية بحرف (y) مسبقاً بحرف ساكن، نغير حرف (y) إلى (i) ونضيف (-er).

noisy noisier than

e.g. Parrots are noisier than spiders.



## Long adjectives

الصفات الطويلة تكون من مفتاحين و كثر

more / less + long adjective + than

dangerous

more dangerous than

beautiful

more beautiful than

delicious

less delicious than

e.g. A snake is more dangerous than a fox.



e.g. Butter is less delicious than ice cream.



## 6 Final Revision

Help your child learn comparative adjectives.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم صفات المقارنة (المقارنة بين الشيئين).



# Activities

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1 Choose the correct answer from a b, c or d.

- 1 The cat is ..... than the mouse.  
a) heavy    b) heavier    c) heaviest    d) the heaviest
- 2 The giraffe is ..... dangerous than the lion.  
a) the least    b) more    c) less    d) most
- 3  $\frac{1}{2}$  is ..... than  $\frac{1}{4}$ .  
a) big    b) the biggest    c) biggest    d) bigger
- 4 A cell phone is ..... than a laptop.  
a) smaller    b) the smallest    c) small    d) smallest
- 5 The car is ..... than the bike.  
a) fastest    b) the fastest    c) fast    d) faster
- 6 Which animal is ..... the bear or the dog?  
a) strong    b) the strongest    c) strongest    d) stronger
- 7 The bear is ..... than the pelican.  
a) big    b) the biggest    c) bigger    d) biggest
- 8 A snake is ..... dangerous than a fox.  
a) much    b) more    c) most    d) the most
- 9 My car is ..... than your car.  
a) long    b) the longest    c) longer    d) longest
- 10 The giraffe is ..... than the horse.  
a) taller    b) the tallest    c) tallest    d) tall
- 11 The fennec fox is ..... than the camel.  
a) small    b) the smallest    c) smaller    d) smallest
- 12 Crocodiles are ..... than fish.  
a) more dangerous    b) the most dangerous  
c) less dangerous    d) dangerous
- 13 Which animal is ..... than the pelican?  
a) more intelligent    b) intelligent  
c) the most intelligent    d) most intelligent

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

AI-BAHER - Connect (4) - First Term 7

4. An elephant is  
a) biggest b) the biggest c) big
5. Dogs are  
a) thinner b) the thinnest c) thinnest
6. Parrots are  
a) the noisiest b) noisy c) noisier
7. I think cats are  
a) nice b) the nicest c) nicer
10. Camels are  
a) the slowest b) slow c) slowest
19. Camels are  
a) taller b) the tallest c) tallest
20. Horses are  
a) fast b) the fastest c) faster
21. Snakes are  
a) the longest b) long c) longer
22. Horses are  
a) less b) the most c) most
- than a mouse.  
d) bigger
- than elephants.  
d) thin
- than spiders.  
d) noisiest
- than dogs.  
d) nicest
- than horses.  
d) slower
- than horses.  
d) tall
- than camels.  
d) fastest
- than ants.  
d) longest
- perfect for desert than camels.  
d) much

**2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

اقرأ وكتب الشكل لصحيح لمكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. Camels are (slow) than horses.
2. Horses are (snort) than camels.
3. Cats are (nice) than dogs.
4. Camels are (perfect) than horses for desert.
5. Snakes are (dangerous) than spiders.
6. Butter is (delicious) than ice cream.
7. Elephants are (big) than dogs.
8. A mouse is (small) than an elephant.
9. The giraffe is (tall) than the horse.
- The dolphin is (dangerous) than the crocodile.

8. Final Revision

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة





## Superlative Adjectives صفات التفضيل

### Usage:

- We use superlative adjectives to compare someone or something with a group.

نستخدم صفات التفضيل لمقارنة شخص أو شيء مع مجموعة أخرى

### Form:

#### 1 Short adjectives

صفات قصيرة

the + adj. لصفة + est

tall → the tallest

e.g. The reed is the tallest



### Spelling rules:

- 1 Short adjectives ending in (-e), only add (st)

صفات القصيرة التي تنتهي بحرف (e) ، نضيف لها (-st) فقط

nice → the nicest

e.g. My city is the nicest place to live.

- 2 Short adjectives ending in one vowel and one consonant, double the last consonant.

صفات قصيرة - حرف واحد متحرك وحرف ساكن واحد - نكتب الحرف الأخير مرتين

big → the biggest thin → the thinnest

e.g. My cat is the biggest in our street.

- 3 Short adjectives ending in (a consonant + y), change the (y) into (i) then add (est).

الصفات القصيرة التي تنتهي بحرف متحرك + حرف ساكن - نحول حرف (y) إلى (i) ثم نضيف (est)

easy → the easiest heavy → the heaviest

e.g. I have the heaviest suitcase.

## 2 Long adjectives

الصفات الطويلة

الأكثر the most + adj. (صفة)  
الأقل the least

beautiful the most beautiful

e.g. I think the rose is the most beautiful flower.

I think the sunflower is the least beautiful flower.



## Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر لإجابة الصحيحة.

- Which job is the \_\_\_\_\_ interesting?  
a) more      b) the most      c) most      d) much
- The \_\_\_\_\_ land animal is the giraffe.  
a) the tallest      b) taller      c) tallest      d) tall
- The elephant is the \_\_\_\_\_ animal.  
a) heavy      b) the heaviest      c) heavier      d) heaviest
- A plant cell is the \_\_\_\_\_ part of a plant.  
a) smallest      b) the smallest      c) smaller      d) small
- The snake is \_\_\_\_\_ animal.  
a) scariest      b) the scariest      c) scary      d) scarier
- Maize is the \_\_\_\_\_ delicious plant.  
a) more      b) the most      c) many      d) most
- The orange is the ... fruit on my farm.  
a) bigger      b) the biggest      c) big      d) biggest
- Our city is \_\_\_\_\_ place to live in.  
a) nice      b) nicest      c) the nicest      d) nicer
- My cat is the \_\_\_\_\_ in our street.  
a) big      b) the biggest      c) bigger      d) biggest

10 Final Revision

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

## Language

10. I think the rose is \_\_\_\_\_ beautiful flower.  
a) more                      b) the most                      c) most                      d) less
11. The daisy is the \_\_\_\_\_ flower.  
a) most colorful                      b) more colorful                      c) less                      d) colorful
12. Sara is \_\_\_\_\_ beautiful girl in the class.  
a) the most                      b) most                      c) more                      d) much
13. Ice cream is the \_\_\_\_\_ delicious dessert.  
a) less                      b) the most                      c) most                      d) many
14. The whale is the \_\_\_\_\_ sea animal.  
a) heavier                      b) the heaviest                      c) heavy                      d) heaviest
15. The butterfly is the \_\_\_\_\_ insect.  
a) more beautiful                      b) less beautiful  
c) most beautiful                      d) the most beautiful

**2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس:

1. The sunflower is the \_\_\_\_\_ (big) flower.
2. The daisy is the \_\_\_\_\_ (short) flower.
3. Snakes are the \_\_\_\_\_ (dangerous) animals.
4. Cats are the \_\_\_\_\_ (nice) animals.
5. The daisy is the \_\_\_\_\_ (small) flower.
6. The sunflower is the \_\_\_\_\_ (heavy) flower.
7. Ali is \_\_\_\_\_ (tall) boy in the class.
8. Maize is \_\_\_\_\_ (delicious) plant.
9. The crocodile is \_\_\_\_\_ (scary) animal.
10. The butterfly is \_\_\_\_\_ (beautiful) insect.

# Prepositions of place

حروف جر مكان



on  
على



in  
في



under  
تحت



above  
فوق



next to  
جوار



between  
بين



behind  
خلف



in front of  
أمام



We use prepositions of place to say where something is.  
نستخدم حروف جر المكان للتعبير عن مكان الشيء.

- The kitchen is **next to** the living room.
- The cat is **on** the box.
- My house is **between** the tall building **and** the tree.



## Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- I live in a village  
a) in front      b) between      c) behind      d) next to the Nile.
- He lives  
a) between      b) on      c) under      d) next a house.
- There is an armchair  
a) behind      b) on      c) between      d) in the table and the couch.
- My house is  
a) on      b) between      c) behind      d) next a yellow house and a brown house.
- The tent is next  
a) at      b) on      c) in      d) to the car.

12 Final Revision

Help your child use prepositions of place.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم حروف جر المكان.



## Language

- 6 There's a plant a) next b) behind c) between d) in front the couch.
- 7 There are 4 chairs and a table a) between b) on c) of d) in the balcony.
- 8 The table is a) between b) in c) front d) next the living room.
- 9 The hospital is in a) front b) next c) behind d) between of the park.
- 10 The park is a) between b) in front c) next d) behind the shopping mall.
- 11 Dad's office is a) in front b) between c) in d) next of the park
- 12 The library is a) next b) on c) behind d) between the supermarket and the school.
- 13 There is a boy a) next b) in front c) in d) behind the tree.
- 14 The cat is a) next b) in front c) under d) between the table.

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets. اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. There is a ball to the chair.
2. There is a picture next) the wall.
3. There is a bed in on) of the chair.
4. There is a table ) the sofa and the chair.
5. There is a mouse in the chair. I can't see it.
6. There are some flowers under) the vase.
7. Ali is sitting (next) the chair.
8. My house is the zoo and the library.
9. There is a chair ... (on) to the sofa.
10. We sat next) the tree and had lunch.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

# Demonstrative pronouns

ضمائر الإشارة

We use **"Demonstrative pronouns"** to say how close an object is to the speaker.

نستخدم "ضمائر الإشارة" لتوضيح مدى قرب الأشياء من المتحدث.

For singular or uncountable nouns

للأسماء المفردة أو الأسماء التي لا تُعد

**This**

**That**

تستخدم للإشارة إلى اسم مفرد / غير معدود قريب.

تستخدم للإشارة إلى اسم مفرد / غير معدود بعيد

**This is + singular noun.**  
(اسم مفرد)

**That is + singular noun.**  
(اسم مفرد)



This is the **socket** the electrician is fixing.

هذا هو المقبس الذي يقوم الكهربائي بتثبيته.



That is the **water** dripping from the faucet.

هذا هو الماء لدى يتقاطر من الصنبور.

child use the demonstrative pronouns.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم

## Language

### For plural nouns

للأسماء الجمع

#### These

تستخدم للإشارة إلى اسم جمع قريب.

#### Those

تستخدم للإشارة إلى اسم جمع بعيد.

**These are + plural noun**

(اسم جمع)

**Those are + plural noun**

(اسم جمع)



These are the plumber's tools.

Those buses are driving the new buses.



## Activities



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. .... is a screwdriver.  
a) This      b) These      c) There      d) Those
2. .... is the tape measure.  
a) They      b) These      c) Those      d) That
3. .... are blocks.  
a) That      b) This      c) These      d) Their
4. .... are the plumber's tools.  
a) The      b) Those      c) This      d) That
5. .... 's the doctor.  
a) These      b) They      c) That      d) Those

Help your child use the demonstrative pronouns.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم ضمائر الإشارة

6. a) Their b) These c) That d) Those is my aunt.  
children are going to school.
7. a) Those b) This c) They d) That the driver's bus.
8. That a) is b) did c) are d) were the plumber's tools.
9. These a) was b) is c) am d) are my clothes.
10. Those a) are b) was c) is d) am parrots flying in the sky.
11. Look at a) these b) they c) those d) that
12. Look! ..... is my pencil.  
a) This b) These c) Their d) Those
13. Look at ..... birds on the tree.  
a) those b) the c) that d) this
14. .... is my watch.  
a) This b) These c) They d) Those
15. .... are my books.  
a) These b) That c) This d) Their
16. .... kites are flying in the sky.  
a) That b) They c) Those d) This
17. .... is the sun.  
a) Those b) These c) The d) That
18. Is ..... your book?  
a) this b) these c) those d) there
19. .... is the moon.  
a) Their b) These c) Those d) That
20. These ..... my pens.  
a) is b) am c) are d) was



## Language

**2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ (These) is my brother.
2. That \_\_\_\_\_ (are) my teacher.
3. These \_\_\_\_\_ (is) my pens.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ (That) are some apples.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ (Those) is a goat.
6. These \_\_\_\_\_ (s) chairs.
7. What is \_\_\_\_\_ (these)?
8. What are \_\_\_\_\_ (that)?
9. These \_\_\_\_\_ (is) cameras.
10. This \_\_\_\_\_ (are) a brown cat.

**3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.**

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة.

1. plumber's - the - These - are - tools - .
2. fixing - the - This - socket - the - is - electrician - .
3. fixed - car - is - mechanic - That - the - who - my - .
4. carrier's - are - the - mail - Those - parcels - .

# The Present Simple Tense

زمن المضارع البسيط


**Form:** I We You They + inf. (أنا نحنك أنتما همهم في المصدر)

e.g. - I play football. - They watch TV.

He She it + inf. (هو هي ذلك في المصدر) + s/es/ies

e.g. - He plays football. She watches TV.

## Spelling rules:

 We add (es) to the verb that ends in (ss, sh, ch, o, x, z).  
(es) نضيف (ss sh ch o, x, z, في الفعل الذي ينتهي بـ)

go → goes

brush → brushes

watch → watches


pass → passes

e.g. - Ali goes to bed at ten o'clock.

 If the verb ends in (a consonant + y), we change (y) into (i) then we add (es).  
إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بـ (y) مسبوقاً بحرف ساكن نحول (y) إلى (i) ثم نضيف (es)

study → studies

cry → cries

 If the verb ends in (a vowel + y), we add (s).  
إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بـ (y) يسبقه حرف متحرك نضيف (s).

play → plays

stay → stays

**Usage:** (To express facts)

- The sun rises in the east.

استخدام لتعبر عن حقائق

(To express habits).

- They go to school every day.

لنتعبر عن العادات.

## Language

### Keywords

الكلمات الدالة

always دائماً } usually عادة often غالباً  
sometimes أحياناً every (day, . . .) كل never أبداً

e.g. - I always go to school. - She sometimes plays tennis.

### Negative

المنفي:

• (I / We / You / They) + don't + inf. (الفعل في المصدر) .....

e.g. - We don't go to the museum.

(He / She / It) + doesn't + inf. (الفعل في المصدر) .....

e.g. - He doesn't play tennis.

### (Yes // No) question

السؤال (هل)

Do + I / we / you / they + inf. (الفعل في المصدر) .....

e.g. - Do they like fish? ☺ Yes, they do. ☹ No, they don't.

Does + (he / she / it) + inf. (الفعل في المصدر) .....

e.g. - Does he play tennis? ☺ Yes, he does. ☹ No, he doesn't.

### Wh- question

السؤال بكلمة استفهام

Q.W. + do + (I / we / you / they) + inf. ....?

e.g. How do you feel? I feel happy.

Q.W. + does + (he / she / it) + inf. ....?

e.g. What does he do on Saturdays?  
- He takes photos with his dad.



# Activities

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Mechanics ..... Cars  
a) fix      b) fixes      c) was fixing      d) fixing
2. The dentist ..... my teeth  
a) checks      b) checking      c) check      d) are checking
3. Builders ..... our houses  
a) is building      b) builds      c) building      d) build
4. The garbage collector ..... out the garbage.  
a) take      b) are taking      c) takes      d) taking
5. The mail carrier ..... letters.  
a) delivers      b) deliver      c) delivering      d) are delivering
6. I ..... my teacher. I listen to him carefully.  
a) respect      b) respects      c) respecting      d) is respecting
7. What ..... the old man sell?  
a) do      b) has      c) does      d) doing
8. Farmers ..... food.  
a) grow      b) growing      c) is growing      d) grows
9. Fishermen ..... fish  
a) catch      b) catching      c) catches      d) is catching
10. Mr. Amr ..... us math.  
a) teaching      b) teach      c) teaches      d) are teaching
11. The taxi driver ..... very badly.  
a) drive      b) drives      c) are driving      d) driving
12. They don't ..... fish  
a) caught      b) catching      c) catch      d) catches
13. Who ..... in a school?  
a) work to      b) working      c) is worked      d) works
14. The plumbers ..... the pipes so we have water  
a) connect      b) connects      c) connecting      d) is connecting



## Language

1. The cleaner the school clean.  
a) keep b) are keeping c) keeps d) keeping
2. The bus drivers the children to school.  
a) is bringing b) brings c) bring d) bringing
3. How does Sherifa her paragraph?  
a) starting b) am starting c) start d) starts
4. Mail carriers to a lot of people.  
a) is speaking b) speak c) speaks d) speaking
13. My aunt work at 6 o'clock.  
a) starts b) are starting c) starting d) start
20. What we need to save electricity?  
a) does b) do c) is doing d) doing
21. The garbage collector to clean the city  
a) help b) are helping c) helps d) helping
- These mechanics in the repair shop  
a) is working b) working c) work d) works
- We always to help each other.  
a) needing b) is needing c) needs d) need
24. Why he need to save electricity?  
a) was b) do c) does d) doing
25. They don't electricity  
a) save b) saving c) saves d) saved

6. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس

1. I up very early every day.
2. She comes back and her fish in the market.
3. He after the trees.
4. A librarian in a school.
5. I don't up the fruit.
6. The guide to sell fish.
7. Why does Malak down the mango tree?
8. What to the old man sell?

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

## Writing skills

### How to write a sentence

كيف تكتب جملة



## Statement

جملة لحرية

### The sentence order

<i>Subject</i>		<i>Verb</i>		<i>Complement</i>
فاعل اسم / ضمير		فعل مضارع / ماضي		تكملة لجملة اسم / صيغة / حال / ظرف
The mail carrier	→	delivers	→	letters
Snakes	→	are	→	scary.
He	→	is	→	kind.
We	→	visited	→	our grandparents.
Ali	→	came	→	early.

## Note

### Subject

قد يكون الفاعل اسم أو ضمير يحل محل الاسم.

## Language



## Imperative

جملات الأمر

\* نبدأ بمصدر الفعل (mt.)

أمر مثبت

e.g. - Clean the board.

\* نبدأ بـ Don't ثم مصدر الفعل.

أمر منفي

e.g. - Don't throw garbage.



## Question

الاستفهام

Yes / No question

- السؤال بمعنى حر ويبدأ بفعل مساعد أو ناقص.

Do Does, Did Is Are Was Were Can Could Will ,Would

? يأتي الجملة + الفعل + فاعل + فعل مساعد / ناقص

e.g. - Do you like your ship?

- Is Sara kind?

- Can you swim?

Wh- question السؤال بأداة استفهام

Who , Where ,When What , Which Why

يبدأ بأداة استفهام:

? يأتي الجملة + الفعل + فاعل + فعل مساعد / ناقص + أداة استفهام

Write a sentence under each picture.

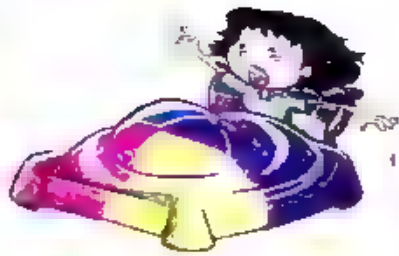
اكتب جملة تحت كل صورة.



He - boy



Miss Mona - English



She - gets up



Farmers - vegetables



Children - football



Ice cream - delicious





I feel good

## Vocabulary



chicken

دجاج



grapes

عنب



milk

حليب



onions

بصل

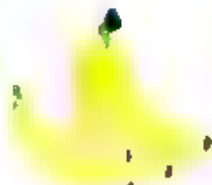


rice



potatoes

بطاطس



bananas

موز



mangoes

مانجو



sugarcane

قصب



watermelon

بج

## Phonics

### Short vowels



bag

حقيبة



mom

أم



mx

مخ

### Long vowels



chk

كيت



n st

نس



rc

### Prefix (re-) = again

repaint

يعيد بلونين

reclean

يعيد تنظيف

remake

يعيد تصنع

redo

يعيد عمل شيء



# Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

الاستماع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Egyptian farmers ..... many things.  
a) produce      b) play      c) write      d) think
2. They grow ..... and fruits.  
a) drinks      b) vegetables      c) wood      d) grass
3. They raise ..... to get eggs and meat.  
a) cows      b) donkeys      c) chickens      d) goats
4. They use water from the Nile to ..... the plants.  
a) cut      b) feed      c) eat      d) water

2 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

الاستماع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Cheng was good at ..... things.  
a) eating      b) cutting      c) growing      d) feeding
2. He put the ..... in the soil.  
a) seeds      b) leaves      c) fruits      d) beans
3. He gave them .....  
a) milk      b) juice      c) water      d) oil
4. The seeds were .....  
a) dead      b) good      c) nice      d) alive

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل نص بكلمات من المربع.

**Fishermen - rich - famous - farmers**

- The land in Damietta governorate is 1) ..... in nutrients.
- The 2) ..... can grow rice and vegetables.
- 3 ..... catch thousands of fish in the sea. Domiati cheese is very
- 4 .....

## Unit (1)

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

**3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- 1 In a competition everyone tries to  
a) lay                      b) win                      c) sleep                      d) lose
- 2 A palace is where an emperor  
a) play                      b) travels                      c) lives                      d) visits
- 3 Someone who is honest  
a) doesn't lie                      b) line                      c) lies                      d) lay
- 4 An emperor is someone who is like a  
a) king                      b) vet                      c) doctor                      d) farmer
- 5 My grandmother raises  
a) lions                      b) cheetahs                      c) chickens                      d) tigers
- 6 Farmers                      chickens in Egypt.  
a) grow                      b) raise                      c) do                      d) water
- 7 We                      rice in Egypt.  
a) raise                      b) write                      c) grow                      d) think
- 8 I drink                      for breakfast.  
a) milk                      b) oil                      c) gas                      d) potatoes
- 9                      grow vegetables and fruits.  
a) Teachers                      b) Doctors                      c) Plumbers                      d) Farmers
- 10 We grow vegetables like                      and onions.  
a) mangoes                      b) bananas                      c) potatoes                      d) watermelon
- 11 The land in Damietta governorate is                      in nutrients.  
a) poor                      b) rich                      c) sad                      d) bad
- 12                      catch fish in the sea every day.  
a) Fishermen                      b) Doctors                      c) Farmers                      d) Cleaners
- 13 I live                      Giza governorate.  
a) on                      b) in                      c) at                      d) with
- 14 Damietta is famous for Domiati  
a) coffee                      b) milk                      c) butter                      d) cheese
- 15                      food comes from Egypt? - Rice.  
a) Which                      b) Where                      c) When                      d) How

 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. The farmers grow rice, tomatoes, potatoes, wheat, lemons, grapes and guavas. Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea. Damietta cheese is very famous. About one and a half million people live in Damietta.


**A) Choose the correct answer.**

- 1 The land in Damietta is rich in ...  
a) oxygen      b) nutrients      c) sugarcane      d) salt
2. .... catch thousands of fish in the sea.  
a) Teachers      b) Engineers      c) Farmers      d) Fishermen

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3 What can farmers grow in Damietta?

4 How many people live in Damietta?

 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

My uncle is a farmer. He has a farm. He grows tomatoes, potatoes, bananas, watermelons and wheat. He keeps a cow, a horse, a camel and a donkey. He raises chickens to get eggs.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. My uncle keeps a .....  
a) dog      b) cat      c) cow      d) lion
- 2 My uncle ..... wheat.  
a) keeps      b) grows      c) writes      d) plays

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3 What does your uncle do?

4 Why does he raise chicken?



## Unit (1)

**3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets**

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. We don't eat candy, ..... we like fruit.
2. I play football ..... (so) basketball.
3. My son is tall ..... (because) my daughter is tall, too.
4. My mother cooks delicious food ..... (but) we all love it.
5. We eat vegetables ..... (so) do exercise.
6. I like to play, ..... (because) I hurt my leg.
7. I can speak English, ..... (and) I can't speak Chinese.
8. I love playing video games, ..... (so) I only play on the weekend.
9. My favorite fruits are bananas ..... mangoes.
10. Ali likes healthy food ... he exercises every day.

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

**4 Punctuate the following.**

1. who never drinks cola
2. maged thinks that Egyptian food is yummy

**5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

**Egyptian farmers**

Guiding words:

( grow - vegetables - fruits - raise chickens - eggs - meat )



# Desert animals

## Vocabulary



camel

حمل



eagle

سر



pelican

بهد



spider

عنكبوت



crocodile

تمساح



snake

بهد



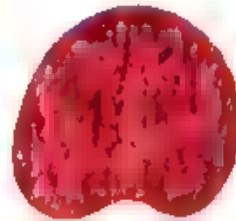
rhinoceros

شیر



fennec fox

فهد



fur

فرو



beak

منقار



horns

قرون



fast

سريع



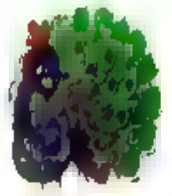
slow

بطيء



heavy

ثقل



beautiful

جميل

## Phonics

b /b/



bee

نحلة



beak

منقار



bird

طائر



bear

دب

p /p/



peas

بندول



pelican

بهد



pin

دبوس



pear

كمثرى



# Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وصع تافره حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 a) Rats      b) Camels      c) Cows      d) Horses  
are annoying animals.
- 2 They are beautiful,      d) lazy  
a) strong      b) weak      c) long      things and people.
- 3 They      d) hurt  
a) eat      b) drink      c) carry      to make clothes.
- 4 We can use their      d) fur  
a) feet      b) milk      c) eye

2 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وصع تافره حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 The fennec fox lives in the      d) desert  
a) forest      b) farm      c) river      than other foxes.
- 2 It's      d) bigger  
a) shorter      b) taller      c) smaller      to hear insects.
- 3 It needs big      d) hands  
a) eyes      b) ears      c) legs      heat from its ears.
- 4 The fennec fox      d) wins  
a) gets      b) earns      c) loses

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من الصندوق.

water - close - large - sand

Camels are perfect for the desert. They have 1 flat feet  
so they don't sink in the 2) . Camels can live without  
3) for a long time. They have special ways to  
4) their noses and eyes to stop the sand from coming in.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Camels have large, flat  
a) ears      b) feet      c) eyes      d) legs
2. Pelicans have  
a) fur      b) claws      c) noses      d) beaks
3. Snakes are  
a) beautiful      b) nice      c) amazing      d) dangerous
4. The fennec fox lives in the  
a) sea      b) lake      c) desert      d) dessert
5. Crocodiles are  
a) nice      b) friendly      c) scary      d) kind
6. Spiders eat insects. They are  
a) helpful      b) huge      c) enormous      d) thin
- Rhim gazelles have yellow-white  
a) eyes      b) feet      c) wings      d) coats
8. Horses like to drink  
a) salt      b) dirty      c) fresh      d) bad
- The fennec fox's thick  
a) eyes      b) fur      c) feathers      d) peel
10. Rhim gazelles have long  
a) ears      b) eyes      c) feet      d) horns
11. The  
a) camels      b) dolphins      c) crocodiles      d) starfish
12. The pelican has a long  
a) paw      b) beak      c) fur      d) ear
13. Horses eat  
a) grass      b) chicken      c) eggs      d) meat
14. Camels are perfect for the  
a) forest      b) river      c) lake      d) desert



## Unit (2)

**Read the text and answer the questions.**

اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة.

The fennec fox lives in the desert. It's smaller than other foxes. Its ears are big, really big! The fennec fox needs big ears to hear insects and small animals. During the day, it's hot in the desert. The fox loses heat from its ears. At night it's cold. The fox's thick fur keeps it warm.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. The fennec fox has big  
a) nose      b) legs      c) ears      d) eyes
2. It's \_\_\_\_\_ in the desert at night.  
a) sunny      b) rainy      c) hot      d) cold

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. Summarize the text in one sentence.
4. How does the thick fur help the fennec fox?

**Read the text and answer the questions.**

اقرأ النص وأجب على الأسئلة.

There are many beautiful animals live in the desert. Rhim gazelle is one of them. Rhim gazelle look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert, and they walk around looking for grass, leaves and plants to eat. They have big ears and long horns. They have yellow-white coats which protect them from the sun. Like camels, they didn't need to drink a lot of water.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. The word "\_\_\_\_\_ " means to keep them safe.  
a) protect      b) live      c) leave      d) look
2. The main idea of the text is about  
a) fennec fox      b) rhim gazelles      c) plants      d) spiders

**B) Answer the following questions**

3. Why are the yellow-white coats useful to rhim gazelles?
4. Where do rhim gazelles live?

**Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

اقرأ واكتب لشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. Crocodiles are ... (most) dangerous than fish.
2. The elephant is ... (big) than the hippo.
3. The fennec fox is smaller ... (then) the camel.
4. Ice cream is (most) delicious than butter.
5. My suitcase is .. (heavy) than yours.
6. Camels live (long) than horses.
7. I think spiders are (scary) than ants.
8. Snakes are (much) dangerous than spiders.
9. Snakes are (thin) than crocodiles.
10. Ali is faster (then) Ahmed.

**Punctuate the following.**

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

1. which animals are scary
- 2 a snake is more dangerous than a fox

**Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

**The fennec fox**

Guiding words:

live - desert - eat - insects - big ears - fur )

# Why do we grow plants?

## Plants



seeds

بذرة



roots

جذور



shoot

نبقة عذ



soil

تربة راعية



reeds

ساق عصا / ابوص



flower

زهرة



lotus flower

زهرة اللوتس



acacia

شجرة سبط



leaf

ورقة شجر



rose

وردة



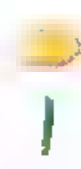
sunflower

زهرة عدس الشمس



tamarisk

شجرة الطرد



daisy

افخول زهرة الربيع



bean plant

نبات لبقول



orange tree

شجرة برتقال

## Phonics

/sl/



slice

شرحة



sleep

ينام



slippers

مبشرة / نعل

/sw/



switch

مفتاح (كهرباء)



swim

يعوم / يسبح



sweets

حلوى



sweep

يكنس



swan

جعد

# Activities

Tomatoes have

- leaves      roots      c) seeds

We can take the seed and grow

- old      new      c) bad

We plant seeds and the plant

- plays      b) sleeps      c) dies

The roots grow

- under      b) on      c) above

Read and circle the correct answer.

The seeds need

- a) sunlight      b) moonlight      c) dark

The seed grows

- a) branches      b) stems      c) leaves

Then it grows a shoot and gets taller

- a) in      b) above      c) under

The full plant grows leaves and

- a) leaves      b) roots      c) seeds      d) flowers

Read and complete.

per - famous - term -

Papyrus is a very special plant. It is

ancient Egyptians used it to make

weather to grow quickly.



### Unit (3)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Tomatoes have ..... inside.  
a) fruits      b) leaves      c) seeds      d) roots
2. We ..... the plant, and it grows flowers.  
a) water      b) cut      c) eat      d) drink
3. The ..... grow under the soil.  
a) leaves      b) roots      c) shoots      d) branches
4. Acacia tree grows in ..... It doesn't need a lot of water.  
a) lakes      b) rivers      c) deserts      d) seas
5. Reed grows near the ..... It needs a lot of water.  
a) rivers      b) desert      c) sky      d) mountain
6. Farmers work in the ..... habitat.  
a) desert      b) rivers      c) lakes      d) agricultural  
Farmers need ..... to grow a new plant.  
a) seeds      b) leaves      c) shoots      d) flowers
7. Tomatoes are ..... before they are red.  
a) green      b) pink      c) black      d) blue
8. Papyrus is a very ..... plant.  
a) small      b) special      c) huge      d) heavy
9. The Ancient Egyptians made paper from .....  
a) papyrus      b) stone      c) water      d) sand
10. The sunflower opens and ..... the sun.  
a) sleeps      b) needs      c) closes      d) faces
11. We used rain water to ..... the seeds.  
a) sleep      b) run      c) water      d) cut
12. We ..... the plant every day, and it grows flowers.  
a) play      b) sleep      c) eat      d) water
13. We plant a seed and the plant grows, that is called .....  
a) information      b) fraction      c) germination      d) cutting
14. The plant has green .....  
a) seeds      b) soil      c) roots      d) leaves

**Read the text and answer the questions.**

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

There are many different plant habitats. There is the agricultural habitat. Farmers can work here. They grow food for us to eat. Some plants grow near rivers and lakes. Those plants need a lot of water. There is also desert habitat where there is not water. Plants that live in the desert don't need a lot of water.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

Plants that live in the ..... don't need a lot of water

- a) sea      b) river      c) lake      d) desert

What does the word "much" mean?

- a) a little      b) a lot of      c) a few      d) little

**B) Answer the following questions.**

What do plants that grow near rivers and lakes need?

Where can farmers work?

 **Read the text and answer the questions.**

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Plants are very important for us. In Egypt, farmers grow different plants. We are growing tomato plants on the balcony. Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes. We plant a seed and the plant grows. That is called germination. We water the plant every day, and the roots grow under the soil. The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits. Tomatoes are green before they are red.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

We can take the ..... and grow new tomatoes

- a) roots      b) fruits      c) seeds      d) leaves

This text is about " .....

- a) jobs      b) animals      c) tomatoes      d) books

**B) Answer the following questions.**

What is germination?

What do tomatoes have inside?

### Unit (3)

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

قرا واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. The butterfly is the **(more)** beautiful insect.
2. A snake is the **(scary)** animal.
3. The elephant is the **(nearest)** animal.
4. My village is the **(nice)** place to live
5. Rose is the **(big)** one of them
6. Crocodile are the **(more)** dangerous animal
7. The sunflower is the **(big)** flower.
8. Hani is the **(fast)** one in the class.
9. Math is the **(more)** difficult subject
10. The turtle is the **(slow)** animal

**Punctuate the following.**

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي

1. why are plants green
2. farmers grow food for us to eat

**6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

**Papyrus**

Guiding words:

( famous - Ancient Egyptians - paper - water - warm weather )

# Where do you live?

## Vocabulary

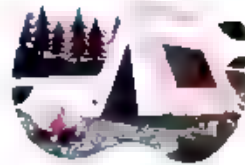
### Buildings



house



apartment



tent



houseboat



hospital



post office



school



supermarket



shopping mall

### Prepositions of place



on



in



under



above



next to



between



behind



in front of



## Unit (4)

### Phonics

f /f/



fish  
سمكة



foot  
قدم



fan  
مروحة



face  
وجه

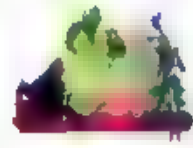
v /v/



van  
شاحنة



living room  
غرفة المعيشة



vegetables  
خضروات

### Directions



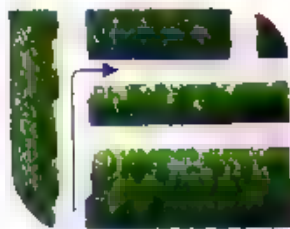
Turn left  
اتجه يسار



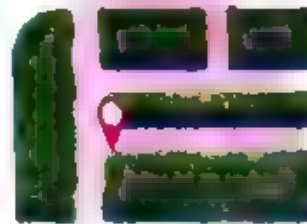
Go straight ahead  
سير للأمام مباشرة



Turn right  
اتجه يمينا



Take the second right.  
خذ المنعطف الثاني يميناً



It's on the corner.  
به عن الناصية.



# Activities

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I live in an  
a) house      b) farm      c) tent      d) apartment
2. My favorite room is the  
a) bedroom      b) bathroom      c) kitchen      d) living room
3. I play games with my  
a) father      b) brother      c) sister      d) mother
4. The living room is  
a) small      b) big      c) narrow      d) tiny

**2 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. There are \_\_\_\_\_ beds in my bedroom.  
a) two      b) three      c) four      d) five
2. There are two \_\_\_\_\_ and a table.  
a) sofas      b) chairs      c) mats      d) ovens
3. The table is \_\_\_\_\_ the two beds.  
a) next      b) in front      c) between      d) in
4. There is a book \_\_\_\_\_ the table.  
a) behind      b) next      c) in      d) on

**3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.**

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

people - beach - Egypt - big

I live in a city called Hurghada. It's in the east of 1)  
on the Red Sea. It's a \_\_\_\_\_ city. About 190.000  
3) \_\_\_\_\_ live here. There's  
a 4) \_\_\_\_\_ and there are lots of interesting things to do.

## Unit (4)

**3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. In the desert, some people live in a  
a) houseboat    b) tent    c) ship    d) school
2. The \_\_\_\_\_ is where we go when we are sick  
a) supermarket    b) school    c) zoo    d) hospital
3. Go \_\_\_\_\_ ahead then turn right.  
a) right    b) behind    c) left    d) straight
4. Alexandria is a large  
a) city    b) village    c) country    d) town
5. A lot of \_\_\_\_\_ visit Hurghada  
a) animals    b) insects    c) tourists    d) birds
6. We can buy food at the  
a) supermarket    b) museum    c) park    d) hospital
7. I sleep in a big  
a) garden    b) kitchen    c) bathroom    d) bedroom
8. My mom cooks in the  
a) living room    b) bedroom    c) kitchen    d) bathroom
9. My brother lives on a \_\_\_\_\_ He loves living on water  
a) houseboat    b) tent    c) apartment    d) balcony
10. We have a big balcony in our new  
a) apartment    b) car    c) tent    d) bathroom
11. We eat our breakfast in the  
a) living room    b) bathroom    c) dining room    d) bath
12. We take a shower in the  
a) dining room    b) kitchen    c) bathroom    d) living room
13. I talk to my family and watch TV in the  
a) living room    b) bathroom    c) bedroom    d) kitchen
14. We learn at  
a) supermarket    b) school    c) park    d) zoo
15. We travel up and \_\_\_\_\_ the Nile..  
a) down    b) in    c) on    d) at

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الاسئلة

I love my town. It is small, but it has stores, offices, a school and many other places. I walk to school every morning. My school is next to the hospital. There's a park. I often play football in the park with my friends.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

The word "small" is the opposite of

- a) tiny      b) big      c) weak      d) strong

I play \_\_\_\_\_ in the park.

- a) handball      b) football      c) basketball      d) tennis

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3 How do you go to school?

4 Where is your school?

**5 Read the text and answer the questions.**

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الاسئلة

My name is Omar. I live in an apartment. My favorite room is the living room. I play video games in the living room. I also love my bedroom because I can relax and do my homework quietly.

There is a balcony. I can see the whole street. My father works in the desert so he lives in a tent. My friend Adel and his family live in a houseboat. It's small, but he loves living on water.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. My friend Adel lives in a/an

- a) apartment      b) houseboat      c) tent      d) house

2. The general idea of the text is about

- a) different homes      b) rooms      c) games      d) jobs

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. Where does Omar live?

Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.



## Unit (4)

**Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس

1. The cat is next . . . . . (of) the chair.
2. The trees are . . . . . of the house.
3. I like sitting . . . . . Ali and Ahmed.
4. The children are playing . . . . . the park.
5. . . . . (What) is the park? It's next to the zoo.
6. The cat is . . . . . next, the bed and the table.
7. The supermarket is . . . . . the corner.
8. . . . . Turns right. The park is on the left.
9. . . . . (Going) straight ahead.
10. I live . . . . . (above) Cairo.

**Punctuate the following.**

ضع - اكتب - ارفق علامات الترقيم

1. where is the park
2. it's between the school and the supermarket

**Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:**

اكتب فقرة اثنا عشر (18) كلمة عن

**My apartment**

Guiding words

( big - new - favorite - balcony )

## Unit (5)

# Where do you work?

### Jobs



bus driver



electrician

في كهريء



mail carrier

ساعي البريد



mechanic



plumber

سباك



garbage collector

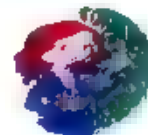
جامع لقمامة

## Phonics

### Two-syllable words

reach er

كلمات ذات مقطعين



### Three-syllable words

me chan ic



كلمات ذات ثلاث مقاطع

ar chi tect



### Four-syllable words



lec tri cian

كلمات ذات اربع مقاطع



### Stress

الشدّة

denist

driv



# Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The ..... are helpful.  
a) plumbers    b) teachers    c) doctors    d) farmers
2. The plumbers connect the ..... so that we have water.  
a) books    b) pipes    c) computers    d) wires
3. The ..... keep our school clean.  
a) plumbers    b) students    c) teachers    d) cleaners
4. The garbage collectors ..... away our garbage  
a) take    b) give    c) get    d) do

2 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. A ..... takes the children to school  
a) bus driver    b) mechanic    c) plumber    d) electrician
2. A mechanic ..... the buses.  
a) reads    b) fixes    c) connects    d) takes
3. A plumber fixes the pipes and .....  
a) buses    b) electricity    c) faucets    d) chairs
4. A garbage ..... takes away the garbage.  
a) actor    b) doctor    c) baker    d) collector

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

قرا واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع

socket - shock - wet - dangerous

How can we use electricity safely? Never touch anything electrical with 1) ..... hands. Electricity is very 2) ..... You can get an electric 3) ..... or start a fire. Never put anything into 4) ..... , only use plugs.

**3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

- 1 A/An \_\_\_\_\_ connects the electricity.  
a) plumber      b) teacher      c) electrician      d) vet
- 2 When there is a storm, we see a flash of  
a) dark      b) sun      c) lightning      d) light
3. When I was young, I played with  
a) blocks      b) faucets      c) garbage      d) electricity
4. You need a \_\_\_\_\_ to fix the car.  
a) teacher      b) plumber      c) mail carrier      d) mechanic
- 5 The bus drivers \_\_\_\_\_ children to school.  
a) wake      b) write      c) connect      d) bring
- 6 My little brother is \_\_\_\_\_. He loves experiments.  
a) angry      b) curious      c) sad      d) patient
- 7 If you get an electric \_\_\_\_\_, you can't control your body.  
a) storm      b) light      c) shock      d) socket
- 8 A mail carrier delivers  
a) garbage      b) trash      c) parcels      d) electricity
9. Don't touch the hot plate. It can \_\_\_\_\_ you.  
a) burn      b) freeze      c) heat      d) boil
- 10 The \_\_\_\_\_ knows how to work safely with electricity.  
a) teacher      b) plumber      c) electrician      d) doctor
- 11 My father carried a \_\_\_\_\_ to open old radios.  
a) tape measure      b) socket      c) screwdriver      d) spoon
12. I wake \_\_\_\_\_ very early every day.  
a) in      b) on      c) up      d) at
13. It's very \_\_\_\_\_ to touch electrical things with wet hands.  
a) safe      b) good      c) dangerous      d) nice
14. A \_\_\_\_\_ fixes pipes and faucets.  
a) teacher      b) mechanic      c) plumber      d) electrician
- 15 My brother is a \_\_\_\_\_. He fixes cars and buses.  
a) mechanic      b) plumber      c) electrician      d) teacher



## Unit (5)

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

When Lara was a child, she loved to experiment. She was very curious. She always carried a screwdriver and she opened old radios, cell phones, and anything that had electricity. Her favorite question was "How does it work?". She learned about safety with electricity.

#### A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Lara was very \_\_\_\_\_ when she was a child.  
a) sad                      b) curious      c) angry                      d) happy
2. Lara learned about safety with  
a) fishing                      b) electricity      c) engineering      d) teaching

#### B) Answer the following questions.

3. What did Lara love when she was a child?
4. What did she always carry?

### Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

When Dalia was a baby, she played with blocks. She put one block on top of another. When she became older, she started making things. She made a little house for her dog and a bed for her sister's doll. She always carried a tape measure and a pencil. You can call Dalia when you want to change something in your house.

#### A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The text talks about  
a) Dalia's sister      b) Dalia      c) Mona                      d) Heba
2. Dalia always carried a  
a) tape measure      b) doll                      c) dog                      d) pen

#### B) Answer the following questions.

3. Why did Dalia use a tape measure?
4. Do you think Dalia in the future can work as an electrician or an architect? .....

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.** اقرأ وكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. This ..... (are) the mail carrier.
2. These ..... (mechanic) work in the repair shop.
3. .... (That) drivers are driving the new buses.
4. These ..... (is) the faucets in our bathrooms.
5. .... (These) is the garbage collector who collects our trash.
6. .... (That) are my books.
7. This ..... (are) my blue pen.
8. That ..... (are) the water dripping from the faucet.
9. Those ..... (is) the mail carrier's parcels.
10. This is my ..... (aunts).

**6 Punctuate the following.**

ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

1. who helps you at home
2. this is a screwdriver

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

**Different jobs**

Guiding words:

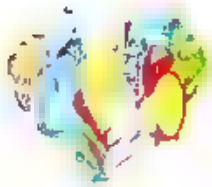
(plumber - connects - electrician - electricity - cleaner - bus driver)



# What do you do?

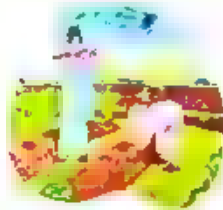
## Vocabulary

### Industry



education

التعليم



farming

الزراعة



fishing

الصيد



tourism

السياحة

### Energy



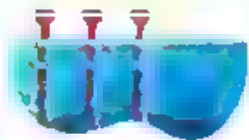
solar energy

طاقة الشمس



wind energy

الرياح



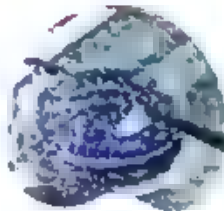
wave energy

طاقة الأمواج



coal

الفحم



gas

الغاز



oil

النفط

## Phonics

# Short Vowel Sound



a /æ/



van

شاحنة صغيرة



dad

أب



sad

حزين



e /e/



ten

عشرة



pen

قلم حاف



fresh

طازج



i



fish

سمكة



pin

دبوس



fix

نصح



u



sun

الشمس



cup

فنجان



fun

متعة / مرح





# Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I work in the ... industry.  
a) education    b) fishing    c) farming    d) tourism
2. People come to my ...  
a) village    b) country    c) farm    d) town
3. It's my job to explain the ...  
a) math    b) English    c) history    d) science
4. I tell the tourists lots of ... information.  
a) interesting    b) boring    c) uninteresting    d) dull

2 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. There's an old ... in my village.  
a) fisherman    b) teacher    c) doctor    d) plumber
2. He sells ...  
a) books    b) fish    c) faucets    d) vegetables
3. He ... his job.  
a) dislikes    b) hates    c) likes    d) disagrees
4. He always has ... fish.  
a) ugly    b) dirty    c) bad    d) fresh

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل النعم بكتلمات من الخرج.

children - mango - house

Sara and Malak are sisters. Each sister has a beautiful

- 1) ... tree next to her
- 2) ... Every year, the sisters
- 3) ... beautiful mangoes. Their
- 4) ... play under the trees.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. A ... works in the tourism industry  
a) doctor      b) guide      c) teacher      d) farmer
2. We always ... We are different  
a) disappear      b) dislike      c) disobey      d) disagree
3. Mechanics ... Cars.  
a) grow      b) teach      c) sweep      d) fix
4. The guide works in ... industry  
a) education      b) farming      c) tourism      d) fishing
5. The fisherman works on a  
a) boat      b) net      c) restaurant      d) library
6. He ... pizza. He doesn't like it  
a) enjoys      b) dislikes      c) likes      d) loves
7. My teacher is ... I like him  
a) hard      b) angry      c) patient      d) sad
8. Farmers ... food  
a) catch      b) take      c) grow      d) deliver
9. I'm a ... I catch a lot of fish  
a) fisherman      b) guide      c) teacher      d) doctor
10. My aunt is a ... She works in a library  
a) guide      b) teacher      c) librarian      d) doctor
11. My father ... down trees to sell the wood  
a) driving      b) teaching      c) growing      d) cutting
12. I respect the ... so much, so I don't throw trash  
a) cleaners      b) plumbers      c) guides      d) farmers
13. He works on a ... on water  
a) bus      b) plane      c) boat      d) taxi
14. Teachers work in  
a) education      b) farming      c) fishing      d) tourism
15. ... is a renewable energy source.  
a) Coal      b) Gas      c) Oil      d) Solar energy

## Unit (6)

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة

My name is Amr, I'm in primary four. I like my school very much. I go to school every day. When I grow up, I want to be an electrician. I want to fix things. I like helping people and I think electricity is interesting.

#### A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Amr is in primary  
a) two                      b) six                      c) three                      d) four
2. Amr wants to be a/an .....  
a) vet                      b) doctor                      c) electrician                      d) teacher

#### B) Answer the following questions.

3. Does Amr like his school? .....
4. What does Amr think about electricity?

### ★ Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة

For a teacher, every day is different. Students always ask surprising questions. Teachers need to think quickly. They need to encourage their students. They need to be very patient, too. They work for many hours every day. It's hard work, but it's exciting. A teacher can change their students' lives. A good teacher is always ready to learn. Teachers teach their students, but students also teach their teachers. Everyone in the class knows different things.

#### A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The underlined word "hard" means  
a) easy                      b) difficult                      c) fast                      d) slow
2. The main idea of the text is about "  
a) houses                      b) teachers                      c) families                      d) environment

#### B) Answer the following questions.

3. What can a teacher change?
4. What do students always ask?

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.** اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

- 1 Mechanics (fixes) cars.
- 2 I'm a farmer. I (grows) vegetables.
- 3 She (work) at a school library.
- 4 I don't think she is right. I (agree) with her.
- 5 The fisherman (work) on a boat.
- 6 Teachers always (neeps) their students.
- 7 The guide (work) in the tourism industry.
- 8 What do you (doing)?
- 9 Students always (asks) surprising questions.
- 10 The rat (appeared). I can't see it.

**6 Punctuate the following.** ضع علامات الترقيم على ما يلي.

1. what do you do
2. mechanics fix cars

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

A teacher

Guiding words:

( teaches - patient - encourages - hard )



## إدارة الإسكندرية (1)

**(1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make  
a) plastic      b) glass      c) paper      d) cotton
2. They made \_\_\_\_\_ from papyrus.  
a) baskets      b) cars      c) pots      d) shoes
3. Papyrus needs a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ and warm weather to grow quickly.  
a) air      b) water      c) seeds      d) sunlight
4. It grows in the Nile Delta near the \_\_\_\_\_  
a) desert      b) mountains      c) land      d) river

**(2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I want to be a \_\_\_\_\_ to catch fish every day.  
a) teacher      b) doctor      c) fisherman      d) farmer
2. Spiders are \_\_\_\_\_. They eat insects.  
a) tall      b) funny      c) huge      d) helpful
3. Tomatoes have \_\_\_\_\_ inside.  
a) seeds      b) roots      c) shoots      d) leaves
4. I have a big balcony in my new \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) street      b) apartment      c) tent      d) nest

**(3) Read and complete the text with words from the box.**

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

raise - shoot - produce - grow - food

Egyptians farmers are clever. Lots of the 1) \_\_\_\_\_  
we eat every day comes from our country. Farmers 2) \_\_\_\_\_  
rice, potatoes and tomatoes in Egypt. Egyptian farmers 3) \_\_\_\_\_  
chickens, sheep, cow and many other animals. Farmers 4) \_\_\_\_\_  
many things that we can buy from the shops or the supermarkets.  
Egypt is our great country.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

Mr. Atef is an active teacher of English. He lives with his family in a village near Luxor. He has a daughter whose name is Nada and a son named Ahmed. Nada is in primary four. She is nine years old. All people in the village love Mr. Atef because he is kind to them. He works in a small school in Luxor. He goes to school by car. He is helpful to his pupils and usually gives them presents.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

- Nada is in primary .....  
a) three      b) four      c) five      d) six
- Mr. Atef lives with his family in a .....  
a) country      b) town      c) village      d) city

**B) Answer the following questions.**

- What does Mr. Atef do?
- How does Mr. Atef go to school?

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

- I don't eat candy. (candy) I like fruit.
- Horses are faster. (the) camels.
- I live in a village. (under) to the Nile
- This. (are) the mail carrier

**6 Punctuate the following sentence.**

ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

sarah is a kind supermarket worker

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Hurghada

Guiding elements

( Hurghada - beach )

## إدارة غرب شبرا الخيمة التعليمية (2)

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Tomatoes have ... .. inside.  
a) soil      b) plants      c) seeds      d) flowers
- We can take the seeds to ... .. new tomatoes.  
a) sell      b) grow      c) buy      d) speak
- The ... .. grow under the soil.  
a) stems      b) leaves      c) flowers      d) roots
- The flowers become ... .. tomato fruits  
a) yellow      b) red      c) blue      d) black

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- ... .. is a very special plant used by the Ancient Egyptians  
a) Pepper      b) Papyrus      c) Soil      d) Balcony
- The ... .. fixes pipes and faucets.  
a) mechanic      b) electrician      c) plumber      d) teacher
- Teachers need to ... .. their students  
a) work      b) sell      c) encourage      d) write
- Basketball is my favorite ... ..  
a) drink      b) sport      c) juice      d) food

**3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.**

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

**between - next - learn - clothes - shopping mall**

My name is Gana. I live in Shoubra with my family. I have only one brother. There is a ... .. in my street. I buy ... .. and shoes from it. It is 30 ... .. to my school where I 4) ... ..

## Exams

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Last weekend, Younis and his family took a boat down the River Nile. They listened to music and were happy. Younis saw some children playing. Suddenly a small child fell into the river. The child shouted "Please help me!". Younis called his dad who saw the child and jumped into the river. He swam and saved the child. The child smiled and thanked father for saving him. Younis was very happy but he decided to learn to swim.

#### A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Younis  
a) could      b) couldn't      c) was      d) wasn't swim,
2. The child thanked dad for  
a) selling      b) calling      c) playing with      d) saving him

#### B) Answer the following questions.

3. Who fell into the river?
4. What did they enjoy on the boat?

### 5 Read and write the correct form of the word ( ) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

- 1 I want to play football my leg hurts.
- 2 The bear is than the cat
- 3 the plumber's tools.
- 4 My city is the place to live.

### 6 Punctuate the following sentence.

ضع علامات الترقيم للجمله الاسف.

Dalia can speak english

### 7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Camels

Guiding elements.

( without water - flat feet )



## إدارة شرق شبرا الخيمة التعليمية ( )

1. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Camels are ..... animals.  
a) strong      b) short      c) bad      d) sad
- They can carry people and things across the  
a) sea      b) desert      c) air      d) department
- They are tall animals with thin  
a) arms      b) nose      c) legs      d) eyes
- We can use their fur to make  
a) buses      b) bikes      c) cars      d) clothes

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The hospital is ..... to school.  
a) next      b) front      c) behind      d) between
- ..... on the fan. It's very hot.  
a) Burn      b) Think      c) Turn      d) Put
- ..... children are going to school  
a) That      b) These      c) This      d) Than
- The camel is ..... than the horse.  
a) tall      b) tallest      c) short      d) taller

3. Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.



My name is Shereen. Last week, I went to the ..... with  
my family. I saw lots of 2) ..... there. They were funny. I gave them  
nuts. The elephants were 3) ..... The lions 4) ..... very  
dangerous. I saw a lot of snakes, too. I want to visit the zoo again.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

Samir lives in a big house with his family. There is a big garden in the house. In the garden, his grandpa grows many different kinds of vegetables and fruits. He grows tomatoes, carrots and onions. Samir's favourite healthy food is mango. He likes to eat it and use it to make delicious juice. Samir likes chocolate, too. He knows it's unhealthy but he thinks it's OK.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. Samir lives in a  
a) tent      b) house      c) garden      d) farm
2. Samir likes  
a) chocolate      b) cola      c) mango      d) honey

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. What does his grandpa grow?
4. What's Samir's favourite healthy food?

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. I play tennis (but) football.
2. A mouse is smaller (than) the horse.
3. My house is next (at) the supermarket.
4. These (is) the plumber's tools.

ضع علامات الترقيم للجمل الآتية.

**6 Punctuate the following sentence.**

Would you cut the mango tree

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

**A healthy meal**

Guiding elements:

(Vegetables - fruits)

## إدارة عين شمس التعليمية (4)

**(1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Camels are very \_\_\_\_\_ in Egypt.  
a) dangerous    b) hard    c) small    d) important
- Camels \_\_\_\_\_ carry people.  
a) can    b) are    c) have    d) can't
- Camels' milk is \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) bad    b) delicious    c) spicy    d) salty
- We can use camels' fur to make \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) tables    b) food    c) clothes    d) juice

**(2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- I like playing tennis, \_\_\_\_\_ I can't play it well.  
a) because    b) and    c) so    d) but
- Ali is the \_\_\_\_\_ in his class.  
a) tall    b) tallest    c) taller    d) most tall
- The \_\_\_\_\_ is a bird.  
a) pelican    b) bear    c) fox    d) camel
- \_\_\_\_\_ mechanics fix the cars.  
a) That    b) This    c) These    d) They

**(3) Read and complete the text with words from the box.**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

**school - likes - teacher - village - Nile**

My friend Mariam lives in a big city. It bigger than my \_\_\_\_\_,  
so she can see the river all day.  
Her house is near the 2) \_\_\_\_\_.  
He works in a 4) \_\_\_\_\_.  
Mariam's father is a 3) \_\_\_\_\_.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. The farmers can grow rice, tomatoes, potatoes, wheat, lemons, grapes and guavas. Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea. Cows, goats and sheep live in Damietta governorate, too. Damiaty cheese is very famous. About one and a half million people live in this part of Egypt. Life is good in Damietta.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. .... catch thousands of fish.  
a) Teachers    b) Farmers    c) Engineers    d) Fishermen
2. The underlined word "good" means  
a) bad    b) awful    c) nice    d) old

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What can farmers grow in Damietta?
4. Do you think life is good in Damietta?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. Ali ..... ( ve) in Hurghada.
2. The fennec fox is ..... than other foxes.
3. I ..... repaint my house yesterday.
4. I ..... eat candy, but I eat fruit.

6 Punctuate the following sentence.

ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

that is the mail carrier's bag

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Egyptian farmers

Guiding elements:

( grow rice - raise chickens )



## إدارة العبور التعليمية (5)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وصنع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ have seeds inside.  
a) Onions      b) Tomatoes      c) Carrots      d) Mangoes
2. We can take the \_\_\_\_\_ and grow new tomatoes.  
a) seeds      b) soil      c) flowers      d) leaves
3. We \_\_\_\_\_ the plant every day.  
a) live      b) look      c) find      d) water
4. The roots grow under the \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) balcony      b) suitcase      c) soil      d) river

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. A/An \_\_\_\_\_ is someone who looks after gardens.  
a) emperor      b) scientist      c) gardener      d) king
2. Farmers like spiders because they are \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) helpful      b) scary      c) huge      d) high
3. My mother is \_\_\_\_\_ the floor.  
a) sleeping      b) eating      c) sweeping      d) swimming
4. We send letters at the \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) school      b) hospital      c) station      d) post office

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

**bedroom - balcony - clean - favorite - because**

My family moved to a new apartment last week. It's fantastic.

My 1) \_\_\_\_\_ room is the living room with the 2) \_\_\_\_\_. Yesterday,  
I helped my mom 3) \_\_\_\_\_ the kitchen. My sister's favorite room  
is the 4) \_\_\_\_\_ because she can relax and do her homework.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

My friend Hany works at a supermarket near our house. My family and I see him every week when we buy food. Hany checks that the food is fresh. He helps us when we can't find something. He is very kind and happy. We all like him. He likes helping people who come to the supermarket because he is a good man. He likes his job very much.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

- 1 Hany works at a  
 a) hospital      b) library      c) supermarket      d) apartment  
 We see Hany every  
 a) week      b) day      c) year      d) month

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. What does Hany check?  
 4. When does Hany help us?

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

- 1 I don't eat candy, (and) I eat fruit when I want something sweet.  
 2 Camels are (tall) than horses.  
 3 The park is (on) the supermarket and the hospital.  
 4 (This) are the bus drivers.

ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

**6 Punctuate the following sentence.**

mechanics fix cars

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:**

اكتب فقرة إشارية من (18) كلمة عن:

Healthy food

(vegetables - chicken)

## إدارة بنها التعليمية (6)

**(1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Students always ask ..... questions.  
a) funny      b) surprising      c) interesting      d) boring
2. Teachers need to be very .....  
a) impatient      b) unkind      c) patient      d) bad
3. Teachers ..... change their students' lives.  
a) can      b) can't      c) shouldn't      d) couldn't
4. A good teacher is always ready to .....  
a) play      b) eat      c) sleep      d) learn

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

**(2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The ..... is a bird.  
a) pelican      b) bear      c) fox      d) camel
2. Farmers like spiders because they eat .....  
a) fruits      b) insects      c) birds      d) crops
3. We ..... respect to the people around us.  
a) disagree      b) show      c) talk      d) work
4. Pros are ..... things.  
a) bad      b) good      c) fun      d) fat

**(3) Read and complete the text with words from the box.**

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

close - water - desert - touch - flat

Camels are good animals for the 1) ..... because they don't  
drink a lot of 2) ..... Their feet are 3) ..... so they  
don't sink in the sand in the desert. They can ..... their  
noses and eyes to stop the sand from coming in.

## Exams

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة.

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Hurghada is a beautiful city in the east of Egypt on the Red Sea. It's a big city and about 190,000 people live there. In Hurghada, there is a beach and there are a lot of **interesting** things to do. There is the Sahara Desert where lots of tourists go on safaris. There is also Sahl Hasheesh in the south of Hurghada. It has some beautiful houses and interesting bazaars, too.

### A) Choose the correct answer.

- Tourists go on ..... in the Sahara Desert.  
a) school      b) work      c) zoo      d) safaris
- "Interesting" means not .....  
a) big      b) small      c) fun      d) boring

### B) Answer the following questions.

- Where is Hurghada? .....
- How many people live in Hurghada? .....

### 5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

- Those children ..... (is) watching TV now.
- My house is ..... the tall house and the tree.
- A snake is ..... larger ..... than a fox.
- Never ..... anything electrical with wet hands.

ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

### 6 Punctuate the following sentence.

I love egypt very much

### 7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Being healthy

elements

( vegetables - sports )



## محافظة الإسكندرية (7)

**(1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**  
استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I'm Tarek. I'm .....  
a) unhealthy      b) healthy      c) fast      d) bad
2. On ..... , I walk to my grandma's house.  
a) holiday      b) Sunday      c) the weekend      d) Monday
3. I really like .....  
a) talking      b) fishing      c) swimming      d) walking
4. Bananas are my favorite  
a) vegetables      b) drink      c) fruit      d) plants

**(2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**  
اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Farmers in my country ..... chickens and cows.  
a) plant      b) grow      c) raise      d) drink
2. Camels are perfect for the .....  
a) river      b) farm      c) sea      d) desert
3. We buy food from the .....  
a) market      b) hospital      c) museum      d) post office
4. The ..... delivers letters.  
a) doctor      b) plumber      c) bus driver      d) mail carrier

**(3) Read and complete the text with words from the box.**  
اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

grass - strong - live - faster - shorter

Horses have large, beautiful eyes. They are ..... than  
camels. They run at 88 k.ph. They have ..... teeth. They eat  
and drink fresh water. They are shorter than camels. They  
are about 380 kilograms. They ..... up to 30 years.

## Exams

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Hi, I am Ali. I live with my family in a big house in Alexandria. Our house is very nice. It has three bedrooms, two bathrooms, a living room, and a kitchen. We cook in the kitchen. We eat and watch TV in the living room. My favourite room is my bedroom. I like to relax, read books, and do my homework in my bedroom. We always visit our grandparents every Friday.

### A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 They watch TV in the  
a) bedroom b) garden c) living room d) bathroom
- 2 The underlined pronoun "It" refers to  
a) a bedroom b) a house c) a garden d) a kitchen

### B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 What is Ali's favorite room?
- 4 When do they visit their grandparents?

### 5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. I don't drink cola (but) other unhealthy drinks.
2. Dogs are (thin) than elephants.
3. The couch is (at) the living room.
4. Those children (is) going to school.

مع علامات الترفيم للجملة الآتية.

### 6 Punctuate the following sentence.

horses like to drink fresh water

### 7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Different jobs

Guiding elements:

( doctor - teacher )

## إدارة طوخ التعليمية (8)

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

استمع وصحح دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Soha works at the  
a) post office    b) school    c) supermarket    d) hospital
2. We met her when we buy  
a) flowers    b) food    c) plants    d) books
3. Soha is very kind and  
a) happy    b) angry    c) small    d) thin
4. We see Soha there every  
a) morning    b) week    c) Monday    d) Saturday

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I think we \_\_\_\_\_ chickens in Egypt.  
a) raise    b) grow    c) plant    d) water
2. "Honest" means someone who doesn't \_\_\_\_\_  
a) live    b) play    c) lie    d) win
3. My friend lives on a \_\_\_\_\_. She loves living on water.  
a) tent    b) garden    c) balcony    d) houseboat
4. Reed and lotus flowers grow near \_\_\_\_\_ and lakes.  
a) desert    b) farms    c) rivers    d) forests

**3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.**

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع

heat - fur - insects - foxes - desert

The fennec fox is a small animal. It lives in the \_\_\_\_\_. It's smaller than other \_\_\_\_\_. Its ears are big, really big! The fennec fox needs the big ears to hear \_\_\_\_\_ and small animals. During the day, it's hot in the desert. The fox loses \_\_\_\_\_ from its ears.

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

My name is Hany. I spend my weekend at home with my family. We have three meals every day breakfast, lunch, and dinner. I always have milk and eggs for breakfast. My favorite meal is lunch. I like it because all the family sits together to eat and talk. My mother cooks special food for us. I often help her in the kitchen. Today we are having potatoes and chicken. It looks delicious.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. My \_\_\_\_\_ cooks food for the family.  
 a) mother      b) sister      c) brother      d) father
2. We are having \_\_\_\_\_ and chicken for lunch today.  
 a) pasta      b) rice      c) potatoes      d) salad

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. How many meals do they have every day?
4. What is Hany's favorite meal?

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. Camels are \_\_\_\_\_ (tall) than horses.
2. Horses \_\_\_\_\_ (has) large eyes.
3. That \_\_\_\_\_ (am) the post office.
4. I don't eat rice. I \_\_\_\_\_ (like) rice.

ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

**6 Punctuate the following sentence.**

do you like your job

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

My House

Guiding elements.

( living room - balcony )



## محافظة الفيوم (9)

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 Dina is in grade . . . . .  
a) two                      b) four                      c) five                      d) three
- 2 Dina lives in a/an .....  
a) apartment      b) tent                      c) housecoat      d) house
- 3 Dina's mum cooks in the .....  
a) kitchen              b) bedroom      c) living room      d) office
- 4 Dina's father grows tomatoes and .....  
a) potatoes              b) onions              c) carrots              d) apples

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. A ..... is where an emperor lives.  
a) palace      b) school      c) farm                      d) bank
2. We go to the ..... when we are sick.  
a) office              b) hospital      c) shopping mall      d) supermarket
3. The ..... is huge and scary.  
a) snake              b) lizard              c) crocodile              d) fennec fox
4. The mechanic works in the .....  
a) park              b) bank              c) repair shop              d) garden

**3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

fish - restaurants - boat - sell - car

I'm a fisherman. I wake up very early. I go out on my 1) .....  
to catch 2) ..... I come back and 3) ..... my fish in  
the markets. My fish go to 4) ..... and homes all over the world.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

Camels are amazing! They're beautiful, strong animals. They help people to cross the desert. Their milk is delicious. We can use their fur to make clothes. Camels are perfect for the desert. They have large, flat feet so they don't sink in the sand. Camels have special ways to close their noses and eyes to stop the sand from coming in.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

Camels can help people cross the

a) road

b) street

c) desert

d) sea

We can use their fur to make

a) books

b) doors

c) clothes

d) juice

**B) Answer the following questions.**

Why can camels walk on the sand?

How do the camels stop the sand from coming in?

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

This

.(are) my father. He is a mechanic.

My cat is

.(than) biggest on our street.

Ahmed speaks English,

.(and) he can't speak French

I love

.(ve) on a houseboat.

ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

**6 Punctuate the following sentence.**

tomatoes are green before they are red

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

My school

( big - teachers )

## إدارة شبين القناطر (10)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- All jobs are very  
a) bad                      b) sad                      c) important                      d) hard
- The \_\_\_\_\_ keep the school clean  
a) cleaners                      b) chefs                      c) teachers                      d) plumbers
- The electricians connect \_\_\_\_\_ so we can use lights.  
a) gas                      b) water                      c) toys                      d) electricity
- The mechanics \_\_\_\_\_ cars and school buses.  
a) fix                      b) cut                      c) run                      d) eat

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Birds have \_\_\_\_\_ and wings  
a) beaks                      b) fins                      c) fur                      d) tomatoes
- Horses can eat grass and drink \_\_\_\_\_ water  
a) salt                      b) sweet                      c) fresh                      d) unhealthy
- The \_\_\_\_\_ grow under the soil.  
a) flowers                      b) roots                      c) leaves                      d) shoots
- A \_\_\_\_\_ fixes pipes and faucets.  
a) chef                      b) teacher                      c) driver                      d) plumber

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

sad - weather - crops - Dam - tourists

Last February Adel went to Aswan to enjoy the warm \_\_\_\_\_ and met  
On the first day of his visit, he saw the Aswan \_\_\_\_\_  
a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ from other countries. On the second day, he  
went to the High Dam which is in the south of Aswan Dam. It helps  
Egypt grow more \_\_\_\_\_

## Exams

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة.

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Ahmed is a clever boy. He is ten years old. He is in grade four. He has English, Arabic, math, science and art. Ahmed's favorite subject is English. He likes his teachers. His school is very big. It has a green playground. He lives in a big house. He goes to school with his friend. He goes to school at seven o'clock. He walks to school with his friend every day. Ahmed wants to be a doctor when he grows up.

#### A) Choose the correct answer.

- Ahmed is in grade .....  
a) five                      b) four                      c) three                      d) ten
- Ahmed's favorite subject is .....  
a) math                      b) art                      c) Arabic                      d) English

#### B) Answer the following questions.

- How old is Ahmed?
- What does Ahmed want to be when he grows up?

### 5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

- Elephants are bigger
- I like playing football,
- Let's
- The car is

and) I can't play it well.  
(having) a red tomato.  
to the tent.

### 6 Punctuate the following sentence.

ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

i respect my teacher

### 7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Animals in Egypt

Guiding elements

( Camels - Fennec fox )



## محافظة المنصورة (11)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 Ali's hope is to live in  
a) a tent    b) a house    c) a houseboat    d) an apartment
- 2 His mother lives in  
a) Cairo    b) Aswan    c) Alexandria    d) Suez
- 3 Ali travels on the ...  
a) Nile    b) Sea    c) Ocean    d) Canal
- 4 Ali likes  
a) winter    b) summer    c) spring    d) fall

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 The emperor lives in a  
a) school    b) palace    c) tent    d) hospital
- 2 Camels have large ... .. feet  
a) flat    b) tall    c) short    d) noisy
- 3 Farmers grow many ... .. like bananas and oranges  
a) fruit    b) vegetables    c) sweets    d) animals
- 4 The Ancient Egyptians used papyrus as  
a) plastic    b) paper    c) wood    d) metal

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

early - hot - fun - apartment - garbage

My friend Omar lives in an apartment. It's next to mine. He works as a mail carrier. It's an important job but it's not fun or cold. Omar wakes up very early when the weather is very hot and also he walks all day and gets a lot of exercise. He loves his job very much although it's very hard.

## Exams

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص واجيب عن الأسئلة.

My name is Mohamed. I'm from Alexandria. My family moved to a new apartment. It's near to my school. So I can walk to school with my friends:

Our school is near a big zoo, so we can go and see animals like giraffes, lions and elephants. We sometimes go to the beach to swim and enjoy playing with sand as we can build enormous sandcastles. All of us like going to the beach.

### A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1 The underlined word "It" refers to  
a) apartment    b) Cairo    c) Alexandria    d) The beach
2. Mohamed goes to school  
a) by bus    b) by taxi    c) on foot    d) by bike

### B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 Why do Mohamed and his friends go to the beach?
4. Where can Mohamed see animals?

### 5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. The giraffes are the (tall) animals.
- 2 Let's (having) lunch.
3. Camels are bigger (then) fennec foxes.
4. .... (When) is your house? It's next to the park.

ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

### 6 Punctuate the following sentence.

why do plants need water

### 7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

My favourite room

Guiding elements:

( balcony - relax )

## إدارة رشيد التعليمية (12)

**(1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ are perfect for the desert.  
a) Crocodiles    b) Rats    c) Camels    d) Cats
2. Camels have flat \_\_\_\_\_  
a) feet    b) mouths    c) eyes    d) ears
3. Camels can \_\_\_\_\_ on sand.  
a) walk    b) swim    c) drive    d) eat
4. They can \_\_\_\_\_ without water for a long time.  
a) live    b) sleep    c) go    d) grow

**(2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Roots grow under the \_\_\_\_\_  
a) chair    b) table    c) shoot    d) soil
2. We can see the street from our \_\_\_\_\_  
a) balcony    b) bedroom    c) tent    d) kitchen
3. They go to the \_\_\_\_\_ to send letters.  
a) school    b) post office    c) hospital    d) shop
4. My father is a \_\_\_\_\_. He catches a lot of fish.  
a) fisherman    b) teacher    c) doctor    d) mechanic

**(3) Read and complete the text with words from the box.**

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

meets - tourists - stores - travels - English

Ahmed likes the summer very much. His parents work on tourist boats. He 1) \_\_\_\_\_ up and down the Nile with them. He sees many interesting places. He 2) \_\_\_\_\_ people from all over the world. He speaks 3) \_\_\_\_\_ and Chinese with the

## Exams

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

My name is Waleed. I live on a farm with my mom and dad. We plant millions of seeds to keep the farm green. We use the Nile to water them. We grow many fruits like oranges and mangoes. We raise farm animals like goats, cows, chickens, and sheep. I like living on the farm. I don't like the polluted air and the noise in the city. I love mom and dad so much.

#### A) Choose the correct answer.

- The general idea of the text is about  
a) Waleed      b) Ali      c) Mona      d) Hani
- The underlined pronoun "them" refers to.  
a) goats      b) seeds      c) sheep      d) cows

#### B) Answer the following questions.

- Where do Waleed and his family live? .....
- What doesn't Waleed like? .....

### 5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

- The snakes are the ..... (more) dangerous animals.
- We like to drink cola, ..... (and) it's unhealthy.
- This car ..... (are) very old.
- Let's ..... (doing) our homework.

### 6 Punctuate the following sentence.

ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

we all love Egypt

### 7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

**Your healthy food and drinks**

Guiding elements:

( chicken and rice - orange juice )



## إدارة الأقصر التعليمية (13)

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Hurghada is in the \_\_\_\_\_ of Egypt.  
a) east                      b) west                      c) north                      d) south
2. Hurghada is on the \_\_\_\_\_ Sea.  
a) Black                      b) Green                      c) Red                      d) Blue
3. It's a \_\_\_\_\_ city.  
a) small                      b) big                      c) bad                      d) dirty
4. About 190.000 people \_\_\_\_\_ there  
a) visit                      b) live                      c) play                      d) run

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I live on a \_\_\_\_\_ . I love living on water.  
a) tent                      b) house                      c) apartment                      d) houseboat
2. \_\_\_\_\_ are perfect for the desert.  
a) Horses                      b) Bears                      c) Pelicans                      d) Camels
3. We \_\_\_\_\_ chicken to get eggs and meat.  
a) raise                      b) read                      c) look                      d) see
4. Dogs are \_\_\_\_\_ than elephants.  
a) thin                      b) thinner                      c) thinnest                      d) the thinnest

**3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.**

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

germination - tomatoes - flower - grow - potatoes

Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can use these seeds to

- 1) \_\_\_\_\_ new tomatoes. This is called 2) \_\_\_\_\_. We put the seeds in the soil and water them every day. Plants grow taller and bigger. The plants finally grow 3) \_\_\_\_\_ and the flower became 4) \_\_\_\_\_.

## Exams

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة.

All jobs are important. There many workers that help us. A mail carrier delivers your parcels. An electrician fixes sockets. A garbage collector collects the trash. Sometimes it's wet and messy, so we need a plumber to fix pipes and faucets. A bus driver is the most interesting job. He drives people to many different places and helps lots of people. All these workers should work hard together to help people and make their life easier.

#### A) Choose the correct answer.

1. We need a/an \_\_\_\_\_ to fix pipes and faucets  
a) plumber b) electrician c) bus driver d) mail carrier
2. The word " \_\_\_\_\_ " in the text means garbage.  
a) letter b) faucets c) pipe d) trash

#### B) Answer the following questions.

3. What does the bus driver do?
4. Who collects the trash?

### 5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. My school is next \_\_\_\_\_ (of) my house.
2. I like to play football \_\_\_\_\_ (and) I don't like tennis.
3. The giraffe is the \_\_\_\_\_ (taller) animal.
4. The roots grow \_\_\_\_\_ (above) the soil

### 6 Punctuate the following sentence.

ضع علامات الترقيم للجمله الاتية.

why do the parents sit in the balcony

### 7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Fennec fox

Guiding elements.

( ears - small )

## إدارة كفر الشيخ التعليمية (14)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- The land in Damietta governorate is rich in  
a) sports      b) nutrients      c) seeds      d) weather
- The farmers can grow rice, tomatoes,      and guavas  
a) mangoes      b) potatoes      c) strawberries      d) wheat
- catch thousands of fish in the sea.  
a) Teachers      b) Farmers      c) Engineers      d) Fishermen
- is good in Damietta.  
a) Live      b) Living      c) Lives      d) Life

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- I can relax and      my homework in my bedroom.  
a) do      b) make      c) watch      d) get
- Cheng was good at looking      his garden.  
a) at      b) for      c) after      d) from
- How      does a rhinoceros live? - About 14 years.  
a) heavy      b) long      c) tall      d) color
- The fox's thick fur keeps it  
a) cold      b) heat      c) hot      d) warm

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

juicy - beak - paw - hungry - thirsty

A pelican and a bear are in the river. They are very 1)  
fish. The bear reaches  
They are both looking at a big, 2)  
The pelican opens its 4)  
for the fish. It lifts its 3)  
It is ready to take the fish out of the water.



## Exams

**Read the text and answer the questions.**

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

All jobs are important. There many workers that help us. A mail carrier delivers your parcels. An electrician fixes sockets. A **garbage** collector collects the trash. Sometimes it's wet and messy, so we need a plumber to fix pipes and faucets. A bus driver is the most interesting job. He drives people to many different places and helps lots of people. All these workers should work hard together to help people and make their life easier.

**A) Choose the correct answer:**

- We need a/an ..... to fix sockets.  
a) electrician b) plumber c) bus driver d) mail carrier
- The word garbage means  
a) faucets b) trash c) pipe d) letter

**B) Answer the following questions.**

- What does a plumber do?
- Why should all these workers work together?

**Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

- I don't really like ..... cars.
- My city is the ..... place to live in.
- The sunflower is the ..... (big).
- ..... (These) is a garbage collector.

**Punctuate the following sentence.**

ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

what job do you want to do

**Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Camels

Guiding elements:

( desert - flat feet - milk )



## محافظة مرسى مطروح (15)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Tomatoes have ..... inside.  
a) seeds      b) leaves      c) trees      d) soil
- The leaves are .....  
a) red      b) green      c) yellow      d) pink
- Tomatoes need ..... to grow.  
a) rice      b) food      c) water      d) tea
- The roots grow ..... the soil.  
a) of      b) near      c) on      d) under

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Acacia grows in the ..... habitat.  
a) desert      b) lake      c) river      d) farm
- It's a wonderful view from the .....  
a) table      b) balcony      c) chair      d) oven
- ..... is the station, please?  
a) Who      b) Why      c) Where      d) When
- Spiders are very ..... They eat insects.  
a) cute      b) kind      c) nice      d) helpful

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

small - wings - amazing - spider - beaks,

I like birds a lot. I see them every day. They have 1) ..... to fly. They have 2) ..... to eat food. Birds have legs and tails. Some birds are big and others are 3) ..... Some of them are 4) .....

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

Elephant is a big animal. It has a long nose and big ears. Elephants need to live in very large areas because they eat and drink a lot. They eat grass and leaves. They don't eat meat. They are the biggest animals.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

- The elephant is a \_\_\_\_\_ animal.  
a) big      b) bad      c) small      d) tiny
- They are the biggest \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) birds      b) animals      c) insects      d) bees

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. What does the elephant have?

4. What does it eat?

**5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

- (these) is the school where I learn.
- (Are) the cat under the table?
- Crocodiles are (most) dangerous than monkeys.
- I play football (so) I eat vegetables

**6 Punctuate the following sentence.**

ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

ali's house is next to the Nile

**7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

My home

Guiding elements:

(Where do you live? - What is your favorite room?)

## منطقة القاهرة الأزهرية (16)

### 1 Listen and choose

استمع واختر.

- 1 We moved to a new  
a) tent                                      b) apartment                                      c) houseboat
- 2 Ali's favorite room is the  
a) bedroom                                      b) living room                                      c) dining room
3. The balcony is .....  
a) small                                      b) big                                      c) short

### 2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words below.

اقرأ واكمل الصوبع الجولري يكلمات من المربع.

rice - delicious - right - special

- Mom : Lunch is ready. I made some 1) ..... food for us.
- Maged : Mom, it looks 2) .....
- Mom : Which food comes from our country, do you think?
- Maged : I think we grow 3) ..... in Egypt.
- Mom : Yes, that's 4) .....

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة.

### 3 Read the text and answer the questions.

The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North Africa. It is smaller than other foxes. Its ears are big. The fennec fox needs big ears to hear insects and small animals. The fennec fox eats insects, lizards, and small mice. During the day, it is hot in the desert. The fennec fox loses heat from its ears. At night it is cold. The fennec fox's thick fur keeps it warm.

#### A) Answer the following questions.

- 1 Where does the fennec fox live?
- 2 What does the fennec fox eat?

**B) Choose the correct answer.**

3. The fennec fox is ..... than other foxes.  
a) smaller                      b) bigger                      c) taller
4. During the day, it is ..... in the desert.  
a) warm                      b) cold                      c) hot
5. The fennec fox's thick ..... keeps it warm.  
a) ear                      b) fur                      c) tail

**(4) Choose the correct answer.**

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. My cat is the ..... on our street.  
a) biggest                      b) big                      c) bigger
2. We watch TV in the .....  
a) bathroom                      b) living room                      c) kitchen
3. The ..... fix the cars and buses.  
a) cleaners                      b) plumbers                      c) mechanics
4. .... is a renewable energy source.  
a) Gas                      b) Oil                      c) Wave energy
5. I want to play football, ..... my leg hurts.  
a) and                      b) so                      c) but

**(5) Re-arrange the following words to make correct sentences.**

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

1. is - A mouse - than - an elephant - smaller - .
2. are - the - tomatoes - Why - green - ?
3. grandparents - us - My - with - live - .
4. you - Where - work - do - ?
5. listen - teachers - to - carefully - We - our - .



## منطقة الإسكندرية الأزهرية (17)

### 1 Listen and choose

استمع واختر.

- 1 Hossam's favorite room is the  
a) kitchen    b) bedroom    c) living room    d) dining room
- 2 Hossam ..... do his homework quietly.  
a) can't    b) can    c) is    d) are
- 3 Hossam has a ..... balcony.  
a) small    b) big    c) cold    d) hot

### 2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words below.

اقرأ واكمل المربع الحوارى بكلمات من المربع.

live - houseboat - you - Nile

- Hazem : Where do 1) ..... live?
- Anas : I live on a 2) ..... What about you?
- Hazem : I 3) ..... in a village next to the 4) .....

### 3 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

I'm Zain. I'm in grade four. My favorite sport is basketball. I'm in a wheelchair basketball team at school. We practice four times every week. I drink cola, but I want to drink more water. I don't play video games because I'm very busy. I eat healthy food. I eat fruit and vegetables. I play basketball with my friends in the park.

#### A) Answer the following questions.

- 1 How many times do they practice every week?
- 2 Does Zain eat healthy food?

**B) Choose the correct answer.**

3. Zain is in grade  
a) three                      b) four                      c) five
4. He likes to play  
a) volleyball                b) tennis                    c) basketball
5. Zain wants to drink more  
a) juice                      b) water                    c) milk

**4 Choose the correct answer.**

اختر لإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1 I sleep in a big  
a) bathroom                b) bedroom                c) kitchen
- 2                      is the cat? It's under the table.  
a) What                      b) Why                      c) Where
- 3 The mouse is  
a) smallest                    b) smaller                    c) small
- 4                      keep the school clean.  
a) Cleaners                    b) Plumbers                    c) Teachers
5. Camels are perfect for the  
a) sea                          b) lake                          c) desert

**5 Re-arrange the following words to make correct sentences.**

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

1. next - My home - is - the - to - school - .
2. park - play - the - I - in - football - .
- 3 are - and - The pe can - in - the bear - the river - .
4. is - Where - the - mall - shopping - ?
- 5 you - helping - people - like - Do - ?

## منطقة الشرقية الأزهرية (18)

### 1 Listen and choose

- 1 We grow ..... in Egypt.  
a) rice                      b) flowers                      c) tea
- 2 Farmers raise ..... to get eggs.  
a) cows                      b) chickens                      c) lions
- 3 Our food is .....  
a) bad                      b) delicious                      c) salty

### 2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words below.

اقرأ واكمل المربع الحوارى بكلمات من المربع.

room - homework - apartment - bedroom

- Mom : Look at our lovely new 1) ..... !
- Hala : It's fantastic!
- Mom : Which is your favourite 2) ..... ?
- Hala : It's my 3) ..... , I can relax and do my 4) .....

### 3 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة.

Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert, and they walk around looking for grass, leaves and plants to eat. They have big ears and long horns. They have yellow - white coats which protect them from the sun. Like camels, they don't need to drink a lot of water.

#### A) Answer the following questions.

1. What do rhim gazelles eat?
2. Where do rhim gazelles live?

**B) Choose the correct answer.**

3. Rhin gazelles don't need a lot of water like  
 a) cats                      b) foxes                      c) camels
4. They have yellow - white coats to protect them from the  
 a) sun                      b) animals                      c) moon
5. They have long  
 a) mouth                      b) horns                      c) eyes

**4 Choose the correct answer.**

احتر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The elephant is ..... than the mouse.  
 a) big                      b) bigger                      c) biggest
2. The fishermen ..... fish.  
 a) work                      b) grow                      c) catch
3. Mum cooks in the .....  
 a) living room                      b) kitchen                      c) bed
4. The hospital is ..... to school.  
 a) next                      b) behind                      c) in front of
5. His car is dirty, he will ..... it.  
 a) reclean                      b) reread                      c) redo

**5 Re-arrange the following words to make correct sentences.**

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

1. eats - The fox - insects - lizards - and
2. do - you - Where - live - ?
3. fastest - is - Cheetah - the - animal -
4. pencil case - My - is - the table - on -
5. want - to be - a teacher - I -



## منطقة الغربية الأزهرية (19)

### 1 Listen and choose

1. Camels are very important  
a) animals                      b) plants                      c) insects
2. Camels are  
a) weak                      b) short                      c) strong
3. They carry people and things across the  
a) sea                      b) desert                      c) river

### 2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words below.

اقرأ واكمل المربع الحوارى بكلمات من المربع.

delicious - country - grow - ready

- Mom : Lunch is 1) ..... I made some special food for us.  
Sedra : Mom, it looks 2) ..... !  
Mom : Which food comes from our 3) ..... , do you think?  
Sedra : I think we 4) ..... rice in Egypt.  
Mom : Yes, that's right.

### 3 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

My friend Sherif lives on a boat in the summer. His parents work on tourist boats, so he goes with them. He sees many interesting places and he meets people from all over the world. He speaks English and Chinese with the tourists.

#### A) Answer the following questions.

1. Where does Sherif live?

2. Who does he meet?

## B) Choose the correct answer.

3. Sherif lives on a boat in the .....  
a) winter      b) summer      c) spring      d) January
4. Sherif sees many ..... places.  
a) bad      b) ugly      c) interesting      d) boring
5. He speaks Chinese and ..... with tourists.  
a) English      b) Arabic      c) French      d) German

## 4 Choose the correct answer.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Horses eat ..... and drink fresh water.  
a) meat      b) fish      c) grass      d) insects
2. The ..... grow under the soil.  
a) roots      b) leaves      c) flowers      d) fruits
3. A mouse is ..... than an elephant.  
a) small      b) smaller      c) heavy      d) smallest
4. We buy food at the .....  
a) hospital      b) school      c) supermarket      d) post office
5. .... is the socket. It is very near.  
a) This      b) That      c) These      d) Those

## 5 Re-arrange the following words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة.

1. weekend - I - shopping - last - went - .
2. Minya - Farmers - in - sugarcane - grow - ?
3. How - is - flower - big - the - ?
4. do - Where - work - you - ?
5. tree - cut - She - sold - wood - the - and - .



# Listening Texts

## Unit (1)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Egyptian farmers produce many things. They grow vegetables and fruits. They raise chickens to get eggs and meat. They use water from the Nile to water the plants.

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

Cheng was very good at growing things and looking after his garden. He put the seeds in the soil and gave them water. But nothing happened because the seeds were dead.

## Unit (2)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Camels are amazing. They're beautiful, strong animals. They carry things and people. Their milk is delicious. We can use their fur to make clothes.

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

The fennec fox lives in the desert. It's smaller than other foxes. It needs big ears to hear insects. The fennec fox loses heat from its ears.

## Unit (3)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes. We plant a seed and the plant grows. That is called germination. We water the plant every day and the roots grow under the soil.

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

We put a seed in the soil. The seed needs sunlight and water to grow. The seed grows roots under the soil. Then it grows a shoot and gets taller above the soil. Finally, the full plant grows leaves and flowers.

## Unit (4)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

I live in an apartment. My favorite room is the living room. I play games with my brother in the living room. The living room is big.

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

There are two beds in my bedroom. There are two chairs and a table. The table is between the two beds. There is a book on the table.

## Unit (5)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

The plumbers are helpful. The plumbers connect the pipes so that we have water. The cleaners keep our school clean. The garbage collectors take away our garbage.

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

A bus driver takes the children to school. A mechanic fixes the buses. A plumber fixes the pipes and faucets. A garbage collector takes away the garbage.

## Unit (6)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

I'm a guide. I work in the tourism industry. People come to my country. It's my job to explain the history and tell the tourists lots of interesting information.

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

There's an old fisherman in my village. He sells fish. He likes his job. We buy fish from him. He always has fresh fish.

## Exam (1)

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

Papyrus is a very special plant. It is famous because Ancient Egyptians used it to make paper. They also made sandals and baskets from papyrus. Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm weather to grow quickly. It grows in the Nile Delta near the river.

## Exam (2)

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes. The roots grow under the soil. The flowers become red tomato fruits.

## Exam (3)

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

Camels are strong animals. They can carry people and things across the desert. They are tall animals with thin legs. We can use their fur to make clothes.



#### Exam (4)

**- Listen and circle the correct answer.**

Camels are very important in Egypt. Camels can carry people. Camels' milk is delicious. We can use camels' fur to make clothes.

#### Exam (5)

**- Listen and circle the correct answer.**

Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes. We plant a seed and the plant grows. That is called germination. We water the plant every day and the roots grow under the soil.

#### Exam (6)

**- Listen and circle the correct answer.**

Students always ask surprising questions. Teachers need to be very patient. Teachers can change their students' lives. A good teacher is always ready to learn.

#### Exam (7)

**- Listen and circle the correct answer.**

I'm Tarek. I'm healthy. On the weekend, I walk to my grandma's house. I really like walking. Bananas are my favorite fruit.

#### Exam (8)

**- Listen and circle the correct answer.**

Soha works at the supermarket. We met her when we buy food. Soha is very kind and happy. We see Soha there every week.

#### Exam (9)

**- Listen and circle the correct answer.**

Dina is in grade four. Dina lives in a house. Dina's mum cooks in the kitchen. Dina's father grows tomatoes and potatoes.

#### Exam (10)

**- Listen and circle the correct answer.**

All jobs are very important. The cleaners keep the school clean. The electricians connect electricity so we can use lights. The mechanics fix cars and school buses.

#### Exam (11)

**- Listen and circle the correct answer.**

Ali's hope is to live in a houseboat. His mother lives in Suez. Ali travels on the Canal. Ali

likes Spring.

#### Exam (12)

**- Listen and circle the correct answer.**

Camels are perfect for the desert. Camels have flat feet. Camels can walk on sand. They can live without water for a long time.

#### Exam (13)

**- Listen and circle the correct answer.**

Hurghada is in the east of Egypt. Hurghada is on the Red Sea. It's a big city. About 190,000 people live there.

#### Exam (14)

**- Listen and circle the correct answer.**

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. The farmers can grow rice, tomatoes, wheat and guavas. Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea. Life is good in Damietta.

#### Exam (15)

**- Listen and circle the correct answer.**

Tomatoes have seeds inside. The leaves are green. Tomatoes need water to grow. The roots grow under the soil.

#### Exam (16)

**- Listen and choose.**

We moved to a new apartment. Ali's favorite room is the living room. The balcony is big.

#### Exam (17)

**- Listen and choose.**

Hossam's favorite room is the bedroom. Hossam can do his homework quietly. Hossam has a big balcony.

#### Exam (18)

**- Listen and choose.**

We grow rice in Egypt. Farmers raise chickens to get eggs. Our food is delicious.

#### Exam (19)

**- Listen and choose.**

Camels are very important animals. They can live in the desert. They are strong. They carry people and things across the desert.